

SoftBank 940P

User Guide



SoftBank

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 940P.

- For proper handset use, read User Guide (this guide).
- Accessible services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 940P is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Note

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Guide content is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☎P.19-34) about unclear or missing information.

Function/Service Name Search	Index	👉 P.19-27
	Contents	👉 P.vi
Objective Search	Objective Search	👉 P.ii
	Index	👉 P.19-27
Function Search	Overview	👉 P.iv
	Contents	👉 P.vi
Using Your Handset	Function List	👉 P.19-2
	Display	👉 P.1-10
Guide Organization	Contents	👉 P.vi
	Section Contents	👉 Chapter Top Pages
Solving Problems	Troubleshooting	👉 P.19-10
	Warranty & Service	👉 P.19-33

Getting Started	1
Call	2
Text Entry	3
Phone Book	4
Digital TV	5
Camera	6
Mobile Widget	7
News/Entertainment	8
Music Player	9
Managing Files	10
Connectivity	11
Handset Security	12
Tools	13
Messaging	14
Internet	15
S! Appli	16
S! GPS Navi	17
Settings	18
Appendix	19

Confirming & Using My Number & My Mail Address

My Phone Number
Confirm your phone number on handset
in Standby without navigating menus.

My Number: ➞ P.1-30

My Mail Address
Customized address may reduce spam.

Customizing Handset Address:
➞ P.14-3

Customizing Handset Settings

Setting Ringtones
Set Chaku-Uta Full® files as ringtones.

Ringtones: ➞ P.18-2

Downloading Tunes & Tones
Download music (Chaku-Uta Full®)
files from mobile websites.

Downloading Music: ➞ P.9-2

Mastering Basics

Learning Your Handset
Learn key assignments, and navigate
menus to select & execute functions.

Handset Menus: ➞ P.1-18
Parts & Functions: ➞ P.1-4

Making Mobile Calls
Use voice telephony or enjoy video
telephony with compatible mobiles.

Voice Calls: ➞ P.2-2
Video Calls: ➞ P.2-7

Fun Stuff

Watching One Seg Digital TV
Enjoy One Seg digital TV.
Set channels in advance
to view/record shows.



Digital TV: ➞ P.5-1

Music Player
Download music files
from websites via
Music Player directly.



Music Player: ➞ P.9-1

Sending Your Contact Info

Save mail address and other details;
send to compatible devices wirelessly.

Account Details: ➡ P.4-12

Messaging Multiple Recipients

Enter multiple mail addresses/numbers
to send a message to all at one time.

Sending Messages: ➡ P.14-4

Add/Edit/Delete Address: ➡ P.14-8

Sending Files Wirelessly

Send files or your own mail address
saved in Account Details via Infrared/IC
transmission to other compatible devices.

Infrared/IC Transmission: ➡ P.4-12

Customizing Standby Display

Add wallpaper, set clock size/position
or set calendar to appear in Standby.

Wallpaper: ➡ P.10-7

Display: ➡ P.18-3, P.18-5

Customizing Menu

Save frequently used functions in
Private Menu.

Private Menu: ➡ P.1-25

Using Shortcuts to Functions

Access shortcuts to frequently used
functions in Standby.

Shortcuts: ➡ P.1-23

Mastering Text Entry Methods

Enter text for Messaging functions or
to add/edit Phone Book entry items.

Text Entry: ➡ P.3-1

Using Messaging Services

Send short or long text messages.
Attach image/sound files, etc. to S! Mail.

Messaging: ➡ P.14-1

Graphic Mail: ➡ P.14-5

Accessing the Mobile Internet

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo!
Keitai to browse sites or download
files.

Yahoo! Keitai: ➡ P.15-2

Camera & Video Camera

Capture still images or record videos.
Use Camera even when handset is
closed.

Camera: ➡ P.6-1

Playing Games

Download and install
S! Appli Games via
Yahoo! Keitai.

S! Appli: ➡ P.16-1



Getting News (Japanese)

Set up S! Quick News to view a variety
of information contents.

S! Quick News: ➡ P.8-4

940P Features

Speed Selector

Rotate Speed Selector to select items, move cursor or scroll pages.

 **P.viii**

Camera-Touch/Album-Touch

Capture, view or search still images by Touch Panel operations. Use a variety of effects to view captured images.

 **P.6-13, P.6-15**

SoftBank Mobile Features

Yahoo! Keitai

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo! Keitai to browse sites or download files.

 **P.15-2**

Graphic Mail


Create HTML messages; select font color/size, background; insert images.

 **P.14-5**

Useful Features


Phone Book/ S! Addressbook Back-up

Save Phone Book entries; back up handset entries on Server, etc.

 **P.4-1, P.4-10**

Camera/Video

Capture still images or record videos with approx. 8.1 mega pixel camera. Set Image stabilizer/Face detection for high-quality pictures and videos.

 **P.6-6, P.6-7**

PC-related Functions


PC Site Browser

View PC-based websites on handset.

 **P.15-5**

Data Back-up/Management

Transfer data between handset and PC for back-up and editing.

 **P.11-11**

Digital TV

Enjoy One Seg digital TV programs and video in wide horizontal screen.

👉 P.5-1

Simple Menu

Use simplified menus limiting to only basic functions.

👉 P.1-26

Download Dictionary

Download specialized dictionaries. Dictionary words appear in character conversion suggestions.

👉 P.3-11

S! GPS Navi

Check your position on map, and navigate to a destination.

👉 P.17-1

S! Information Channel/Weather (Japanese)

Subscribe to content and periodically receive update information. Set Weather Indicator to check weather forecast in Standby.

👉 P.8-2

Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Download and paste widgets to Standby for quick access to information and various tools.

👉 P.7-1

Calendar & Alarm

Add events by time/date and set Event Alarms to help manage your schedule.

👉 P.13-2, P.13-6

Music Player

Play handset/microSD Card music files.

👉 P.9-1

Voice Recorder

Record your voice to set as ringtone, etc.

👉 P.13-14

microSD Mode

Access data on microSD Card from a PC by connecting handset to PC via USB cable (not included).

👉 P.10-21

Bluetooth®

Connect wirelessly to a Bluetooth®-compatible speaker to enjoy TV in dynamic sound.

👉 P.11-6

Osaifu-Keitai®

Use handset as an electronic cash card, reward card or membership card.

👉 P.13-9

Contents

Contents	vi
Package Contents	viii
Using This Guide	viii
Safety Precautions	xii
Handling Precautions	xviii
Copyrights and Others	xxi
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)	xxv

1. Getting Started

USIM Card	1-2
Parts & Functions	1-4
About Battery	1-11
Handset Power On/Off	1-15
Manner Mode	1-16
Handset Menus	1-18
Standby Options & Event Indicators ...	1-22
Customizing User Interface	1-23
Private Menu	1-25
Simple Menu	1-26
Passwords	1-28
Multi Task	1-29
View Blind	1-30
My Number	1-30

2. Call

Making/Answering Voice Calls	2-2
Making/Answering Video Calls	2-6
International Calls	2-9
Engaged Call Functions	2-12

Call Log	2-13
Answer Phone/Call Data	2-15
Optional Services	2-17

3. Text Entry

Text Entry	3-2
Entering Text	3-3
Conversion Methods (Japanese)	3-7
Editing Text	3-10
User's Dictionary	3-11
Download Dictionary	3-11

4. Phone Book

Overview	4-2
Saving to Phone Book	4-3
Searching/Using Phone Book	4-6
Managing Phone Book	4-9
S! Addressbook Back-up	4-10
Account Details	4-12
Voice Dial	4-13

5. Digital TV

Basics	5-2
Initial Setup	5-4
Watching TV	5-5
TV Links (Japanese)	5-10
Recording/Playing Programs	5-11

6. Camera

Before Using Camera	6-2
Pictures/Videos	6-6

Focus Functions (Outside Camera) ...	6-11
Viewing Saved Images	6-12
Camera-Touch	6-13
Album-Touch	6-15

7. Mobile Widget

Mobile Widget (Japanese)	7-2
Using Widgets	7-2

8. News/Entertainment

S! Information Channel/Weather (Japanese)	8-2
S! Quick News (Japanese)	8-4
E-Books (Japanese)	8-6
Blogging	8-7

9. Music Player

Overview	9-2
Saving Music	9-2
Using Music Player	9-5

10. Managing Files

Data Folder	10-2
Opening Files	10-4
Using/Editing Still Images	10-12
Managing Folders/Files	10-14
microSD Card	10-16

11. Connectivity

Infrared	11-2
IC Transmission	11-4

Bluetooth®	11-6
SoftBank Utility Software (Japanese).....	11-11
USB (Japanese)	11-11
AV Output.....	11-13

12. Handset Security

Changing Phone Password	12-2
Security Functions	12-2
Restricting Calls/Messages.....	12-10
Reset.....	12-14

13. Tools

Calendar	13-2
Tasks	13-5
Alarms	13-6
Calculator	13-8
Notepad.....	13-8
Osaifu Keitai®	13-9
Dictionary (Japanese).....	13-13
Sound Recorders.....	13-14
Bar Code Reader.....	13-15
Pedometer	13-17

14. Messaging

Basics.....	14-2
Sending S! Mail & SMS.....	14-4
Receiving & Viewing Messages	14-10
Organizing/Using Messages	14-15

15. Internet

Getting Started	15-2
Using Yahoo! Keitai	15-3
Using PC Site Browser	15-5
Basic Operations.....	15-6
Using Information	15-8
Option Menu Items.....	15-13

16. S! Appli

Before Using S! Appli	16-2
Using S! Appli	16-3

17. S! GPS Navi

About S! GPS Navi.....	17-2
Using S! GPS Navi.....	17-2

18. Settings

Sound & Vibration	18-2
Display.....	18-3
Speed Selector Setting	18-6
Manner Mode	18-7
Incoming Settings.....	18-7
Date & Time	18-8
Call Settings	18-9
Notification Light	18-10
Text Entry.....	18-11
Phone Book	18-12
Voice Dial.....	18-12
Video Call	18-13
Digital TV	18-14

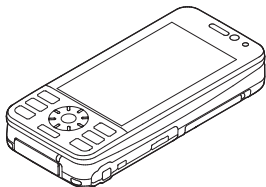
Camera	18-15
Mobile Widget (Japanese)	18-18
S! Quick News (Japanese)	18-18
Bluetooth®	18-19
Messaging	18-20
Internet.....	18-22
S! Appli.....	18-24
Osaifu-Keitai®	18-24
S! GPS Navi Settings	18-25
Default Settings	18-26
Confirming Settings.....	18-27

19. Appendix

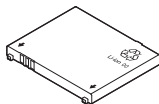
Function List	19-2
Troubleshooting.....	19-10
Software Update	19-12
Quick Open Menu	19-14
Key Assignments (5-touch Mode).....	19-15
(2-touch Mode).....	19-16
(NIKO-touch Mode).....	19-17
Symbol List	19-18
Character Code List	19-19
Weather Indicator List	19-24
Memory List.....	19-25
Specifications	19-26
Index.....	19-27
Warranty & Service.....	19-33
Customer Service.....	19-34

Package Contents

□ Handset (940P)



□ Battery (PMBAS1)



□ Quick Start Guide (Japanese)

□ Safety Precautions (Japanese)

Note

- Use SoftBank specified AC Charger (sold separately) to charge battery.
- For more information about AC Charger and accessories, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P.19-34).
- Optional battery is available for separate purchase.
- 940P accepts microSD Card (not included). Purchase microSD Card to use related functions (P.10-16).

Using This Guide

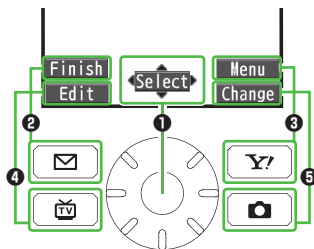
Before reading this guide, make a note of the following:

- In this guide, SoftBank 940P User Guide, SoftBank 940P is abbreviated as 940P.
- "microSD Card" and "microSDHC Card" are referred to as "microSD Card" in this guide.
- Handset operations and screenshots are based on defaults for handset color **Black** (P.18-26).
- Sample screenshots, etc. are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
- Key icons use simplified labels.
- Most operation descriptions begin in Standby.
- Pressing a key for more than one second is described as "Press and hold."




Guide Symbols

Press the corresponding key to execute the function or operation indicated at the bottom of Display.

Example:

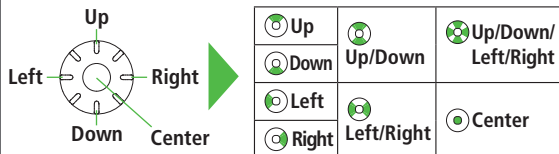


Speed Selector (1)

Operations	Softkey Label*
Press  to scroll	
Press 	Select

* Softkey labels vary by menu.

Use Speed Selector to select items, navigate menus, etc. In this guide, Speed Selector operations are indicated as shown below.



Softkeys (2,3,4,5)

In this guide, Softkey operations are indicated as shown below.

Example 2,3:  [Finish],  [Menu]

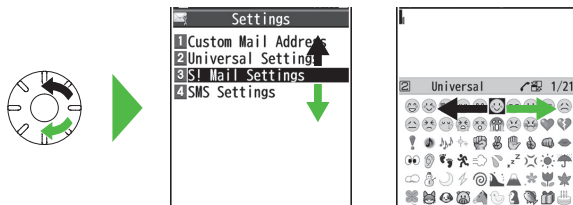
- [Finish] and [Menu] are Softkey label examples; Softkey labels vary by menu.

Using Speed Selector

Rotate Speed Selector to select items and move cursor.

Available Operations


- Select items
- Move cursor
- Scroll pages
- Adjust volume in volume control windows
- Adjust Camera zoom
- Toggle still images
- etc.



Example 1:
Selecting Items

Example 2:
Moving Cursor

Operation From Standby


From Standby, rotate Speed Selector to open Key Guidance. Change key assignment as required. Set a function for each direction (Rotation Setting:  P.18-6).

Note

- Rotating operation may be not available in some functions.
- Rotating operation is not available when Display is turned off.

Tip

Settings

- Change/Disable Speed Selector Sound
- Deactivate Speed Selector ( P.18-6)

Japanese Functions & Services

When "(Japanese)" appears in a title, Japanese ability is required to use full range of the function or service.

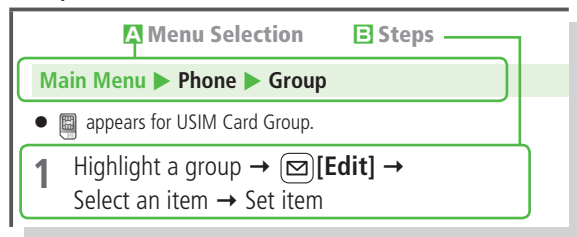
Operation Descriptions

- The following examples are for reference only and may differ from actual operations.

Basic Operations

Operations are expressed as shown here.

Example 1:



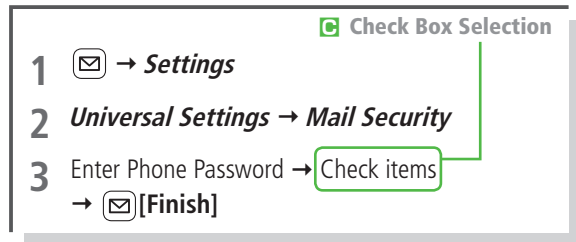
A Menu Selection

- 1 Press in Standby to open Main Menu.
- 2 Use to highlight **Phone**; then press [Select].
- 3 Use to highlight **Group**; then press [Select].

B Steps

- 1 Use to highlight a group; then press [Edit].
- 2 Use to highlight an item; then press [Select].
- 3 Set respective items.

Example 2:



C Check Box Selection

- 1 Use to highlight an item; then press . Check Box changes to . Repeat to select multiple items.
- 2 To deselect an item, use to highlight item; then press . Check mark disappears.

Advanced Operations

For advanced features and settings, go to pages indicated under Tip.

Example:

Tip

- Operations Available during a Voice Call (👉P.2-12)
- Making Calls from Call Log (👉P.2-14)
- Saving Entered Numbers to Phone Book (👉P.4-5)

Settings

- Set Handset Response when Closed during Call (👉P.18-9)

Settings

Refer to Chapter 18 "Settings."

Abbreviated Descriptions

For advanced settings (Chapter 18), initial operations may be abbreviated or omitted.

Example:

A Abbreviated Steps

Initial steps are abbreviated.

From **Main Menu** **Tools** **Calendar**

Functions Available in Calendar Window

> Highlight a date → **[Yr]** **[Menu]** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Create a new entry (👉P.13-2, P.13-3)
Weekly display/ 1 Month	Toggle Monthly/Weekly view

B Steps

Follow these steps after **Abbreviated Steps**.

■ Use Other Graphic Mail Settings




> In S! Mail text entry window, → Select an arrange item

C Omitted Steps







Initial steps are omitted. Start operations from specified window.

Safety Precautions

- Before use, read these safety precautions carefully and use your handset properly. Keep this guide in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.
- These symbols indicate level of harm from failure to observe cautions or improper usage.
Make sure to understand these symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

	Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
	Warning	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
	Caution	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

- Symbol Explanations
Make sure to understand these symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

	Prohibited Action		Avoid Moisture
	Disassembly Prohibited		Always Dry Hands First
	Compulsory Action		Disconnect Power Source

Handset, Battery, USIM Card, Charger (sold separately) & microSD Card (not included)



Danger



Do not use or leave handset or related hardware in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near an open flame/heater, in sunlight or inside a car on an extremely hot day. Do not charge, leave, use, or be carrying handset or related hardware in a warm place or where heat collects, such as under a kotatsu (blanketed warming table) or electric blanket, next to a kairo (worn warming patch), etc.
Battery may leak, overheat, explode, or ignite. Handset or related hardware may deform or malfunction. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.



Do not use excessive force to attach battery or connect charger to handset. Battery or connector may be the wrong way around.
Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do not disassemble, modify or solder handset.
May cause accidents such as fire, bodily injury, electric shock or equipment malfunction. Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Modifying handset is a violation of Radio Law and subject to prosecution.



Do not get handset, battery and charger wet.
If handset, battery or charger is left wet or battery is charged after exposure to liquids such as water or pet urine, overheating, electric shock, fire, injury or malfunction may occur. Be mindful of location when using handset, battery and charger. Handle with care.



Use specified battery, charger (sold separately) and Desktop Holder (not included).
Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and charger may overheat, catch fire or cause malfunction.



Warning



Do not place handset, battery or charger inside cooking appliances, such as microwave ovens or high-pressure containers, or on IH cooking heaters.

Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and handset and charger may overheat, emit smoke, catch fire or cause malfunction.



Do not drop, throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.

Battery may leak, overheat, explode, catch fire, or cause electric shock or damage to handset.



Do not allow liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) or conductive objects (pencil leads, metal pieces, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) to contact charger terminals, external port terminals or microSD Card slot.

May cause fire or malfunction triggered by short-circuit.



Keep handset off and charger disconnected near propane gas, in filling stations or places where flammable gas is generated.

Handset use in such areas may lead to fire. Be sure to turn off handset before using Osaifu-Keitai® in filling stations. (When IC Card Lock is set, turn off handset after unlocking setting.)



If handset, battery or charger emits an unusual sound, smoke or odor, perform following steps:

1. Unplug charger from outlet.
 2. Turn off handset.
 3. Remove battery. (Take care to avoid burns or injuries.)
- May cause fire or electric shock.



Caution



Do not place handset, battery or charger on an unstable surface.

May fall, causing injury or malfunction. Take extra precautions while vibration alert is active or during charging.



Keep handset out of the reach of young children.

May result in accidental ingestion or bodily injury.



If for use by child, guardian should teach proper handling and ensure handset is used as directed.

May result in bodily injury.

Battery



Danger

See battery label to confirm battery type.

Label	Battery Type
Li-ion 00	Lithium-ion



Do not throw battery into fire.

Battery may leak, explode or catch fire.



Do not pierce battery with a nail or other sharp object, hit it with a hammer, step on it, or subject it to strong shocks.

Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Do not touch terminals with metallic objects or carry/store battery with conductive objects (pencil leads, metal pieces, necklaces, hair pins, etc.).

Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



If battery fluid gets into eyes, do not rub; flush with clean water and see a doctor immediately.
Failure to do so may cause blindness.



Warning



If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using handset immediately and rinse it off with clean water.
Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.



If battery does not charge after specified time, stop charging.
Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



If battery emits an unusual odor, overheats, discolors or deforms, immediately remove battery and move it away as far as possible from any flame or fire. Take care to avoid burns or injuries.
Battery may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.



Caution



Do not dispose of battery with ordinary refuse.
Place tape over the terminals to insulate battery, and take it to a SoftBank retailer or institution that handles used batteries in your area. Comply with local waste disposal regulations for recycling.

Handset



Warning



Do not use handset while driving a vehicle.

Doing so may interfere with safe driving and cause an accident. Stop your vehicle to park in a safe place before using handset. Drivers using handsets while driving are subject to prosecution.



Do not aim the infrared port at eyes when using infrared communication.

Doing so may affect eyes.



Do not point flash/photo light directly at someone's eyes. Do not look directly at flash/photo light while light is on.

May damage eyesight or cause accidents due to momentary sight loss or surprise. Do not take pictures of infants at close range.



Turn off handset near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak electronic signals.

Handset may cause these devices to malfunction.

*Electronic devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter defibrillators, other medical electronic devices, fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatically controlled devices.



Turn off handset aboard aircraft.

Handset signal may interfere with aircraft operation.

When in-flight handset use is permitted, follow airline instructions for proper use.



If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as Vibration or Ringer Volume for incoming transmissions.

May affect heart.



In a thunderstorm, immediately turn off handset and seek shelter.
There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.



Caution



If handset affects car electronics, stop use.

Handset use may affect electronics in some models. In this case, stop use; could impede safe driving.



Do not place a magnetic card near or in handset.

The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.



Do not swing handset by its strap, etc.

Handset may strike you or others, or strap may be broken resulting in injury or damage to handset or other property.



Do not place your ear too close to the speaker while ringer sounds or sound files play.

May impair hearing.



Handset may become hot while used in a hot environment.

Avoid prolonged skin contact that may result in burns.



Make sure not to trap fingers or objects when opening/closing handset.

May result in injury or damage to display.



Watch TV with adequate lighting and distance from Display.

May damage eyesight.



Do not turn up the volume unnecessarily high when using earphones.

Using earphones with volume turned up for an extended period may impair hearing or injure ears.



If skin abnormality occurs, immediately stop use and seek medical treatment.

Handset contains metals. Handset use may cause itching, rashes, eczema or other symptoms depending on the user's physical condition.

Parts		Materials/Surface Finish
Outer case	Display side	PC resin/Evaporated tin, Acrylic UV cured coating
	Keypad side, Battery side, Battery cover	ABS resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
Side Keys, MULTI/Widget Key		ABS resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
Display panel		Tempered glass, PET resin/ Hard coating
Outside Camera lens		Acrylic resin/ Hard coating
Outside Camera panel		PC resin
Keypad		PC resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
Shutter Key		PC resin/Evaporated aluminum, Acrylic UV cured coating
Speed Selector		PC resin/Evaporated aluminum, Acrylic UV cured coating

Parts		Materials/Surface Finish
External Port cover		PC resin, Elastomer resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
Slide rail		Stainless steel/ Fluorinated coating
Display rear side		ABS resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
Charging Terminals		Phosphor bronze/ Gold plating on nickel plating
Rear side screw covers		PET resin
TV Antenna	Upper part	ABS resin/ Acrylic UV cured coating
	Middle part	Stainless steel
	Lower part	NiTi alloy
	Base: Hinge (Upper part)	Stainless steel
	Base: Hinge (Lower part)	Brass/Tin-cobalt plating
	Base: Cap	PET resin
Flash/Photo Light lens		PC resin
Screws (Battery compartment)		Aluminium killed steel/ Nickel plating
Battery compartment		PC resin
Battery terminals	Resin part	PPS resin
	Metal part	Beryllium copper/ Gold plating on nickel plating
Battery	Battery	PC resin (label: PET resin)
	Terminals	Glass fiber reinforced epoxy board/ Gold plating on nickel plating

Charger (sold separately)



Warning



Do not cover or wrap charger during charging.

May cause overheating, fire or malfunction.



Always use the specified power supply/voltage.

Using incorrect voltage may cause fire or malfunction.

AC Charger: AC100V-240V (household AC outlet only)

In-Car Charger: DC12V, 24V (vehicles with a negative earth only)



**Use In-Car Charger in vehicles with a negative (-) earth.
Do not use In-Car Charger if vehicle has a positive (+) earth.**

May cause fire.



Do not use charger in thunderstorms.

There is a risk of suffering electric shock.



Do not handle charger with wet hands.

May cause electric shock or malfunction.



If In-Car Charger fuse blows, always replace it with specified fuse.

Using the incorrect fuse may cause fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.



If dust accumulates on plug, unplug charger and wipe with a dry cloth.

May cause fire.



When plugging charger into outlet, keep conductive materials (pencil leads, metal parts, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) away from Desktop Holder terminals or charger plug/terminals and plug charger firmly into outlet.
May cause electric shock, short-circuit or fire.



Unplug AC Charger during periods of disuse.
May cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.



If liquid such as water or pet urine get into charger, unplug it immediately.
May cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.



Caution



Pull charger (not cord) to unplug charger.
Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause electric shock or fire.



Always unplug charger before cleaning it.
May result in electric shock.

Near Electronic Medical Equipment



Warning

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter defibrillator, keep handset more than 22 cm away from the implant at all times.
Handset radio waves may affect implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter defibrillator operations.



Persons using electronic medical equipment outside medical facilities should consult the vendor about possible radio wave effects.
Handset radio waves may affect electronic medical equipment operations.



Observe the following in medical facilities. Handset radio waves may affect electronic medical equipment.

- Do not take handset into operating rooms, Intensive Care Units or Coronary Care Units.
 - Turn off handset inside hospital wards.
 - Turn off handset even outside hospital wards (in hospital lobbies, etc.); electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
 - Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
-



Turn off handset in crowded places such as rush hour trains; implantable cardiac pacemakers or cardioverter defibrillators may be in use nearby.
Handset radio waves may affect implantable cardiac pacemaker or cardioverter defibrillator operations.

Handling Precautions

General Notes

- SoftBank is not liable for damages from accidental loss/alteration/repair of handset/microSD Card information (Phone Book entries, image/sound files, etc.). Back-up important information.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- Read microSD Card manual beforehand for proper use.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
Digital signals reduce interception, however transmissions may be overheard. Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.
"eavesdropping" means radio communication is received by another receiver deliberately or accidentally.
- **Be cautious of unsafe websites. Take extra precautions especially when posting personal information on websites.**

Electromagnetic Waves

- For body worn operation, this mobile phone has been tested and meets RF exposure guidelines when used with an accessory containing no metal and positioning the handset a minimum 15 mm from the body. Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with RF exposure guidelines.

FCC Notice

- **This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:**
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- **Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the manufacturer responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

FCC RF Exposure Information

Your handset is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the emission limits for exposure to radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission of the U.S. Government.

The guidelines are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organization through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg. The tests are performed in positions and locations (e.g. at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC for each model.

The highest SAR value for this model handset as reported to the FCC when tested for use at the ear is 0.331 W/kg, and when worn on the body in a holder or carry case, is 0.345 W/kg.

Body-worn Operation; This device was tested for typical body-worn operations with the back of the handset kept 1.5 cm from the body. To maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the user's body and the back of the handset. The use of beltclips, holsters and similar accessories should not contain metallic components in its assembly. The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this model handset with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF emission guidelines. SAR information on this model handset is on file with the FCC and can be found under the Display Grant section of <http://www.fcc.gov/oet/ea/> after searching on FCC ID UCE209020A. Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website at <http://www.phonefacts.net>.

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed the limits for exposure to radio waves recommended by international guidelines. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization ICNIRP and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The guidelines use a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when tested at the ear was 0.401 W/kg*. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in this user guide**. In this case, the highest tested SAR value is 0.718 W/kg. As SAR is measured utilizing the devices highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device while operating is typically below that indicated above. This is due to automatic changes to the power level of the device to ensure it only uses the minimum level required to reach the network.

The World Health Organization has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a hands-free device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body.

*The tests are carried out in accordance with international guidelines for testing.

** Please see Electromagnetic Waves on page xviii for important notes regarding body worn operation.

Declaration of Conformity

CE0168

We, Panasonic Mobile Communications Development of Europe Ltd., declare that SoftBank 940P conforms with the essential and other relevant requirements of the directive 1999/5/EC.

A declaration of conformity to this effect can be found at <http://panasonic.net/pmc/support/index.html>

- This product is only intended for sale in Japan.
- Compliance to the European RTTE directive applies to: SoftBank 940P handset, Battery (PMBAS1) and AC Charger (SoftBank ZTDAA1).

Handset Care

- 940P is not waterproof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
 - Do not expose handset to precipitation.
 - Air conditioned air may cause condensation, resulting in corrosion.
 - Do not put handset in damp places like bathrooms.
 - On the beach, keep handset away from sun and surf.
 - Perspiration in handset may cause malfunction.
- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset within temperatures of 5°C to 35°C and humidity 35% to 85%. Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Handset may become warm during use or charging. This is not malfunction.
- Battery may swell as service life nears end; this is not a problem.

- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may damage color filter and affect image color.
- Soiled terminals may cause poor connection. If the terminals are dirty, use a dry cloth or cotton swab to wipe them clean.
- Clean handset with dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Avoid forceful rubbing or scratching handset display.
- Do not put stickers on back of handset display. Stickers get caught between handset parts and cause malfunction or damage to handset.
- Do not subject handset to excessive force.
 - Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.
 - Do not place heavy objects on a bag with handset inside.
- Do not remove nameplate from handset; doing so invalidates warranty.
- Always turn off handset before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving or sending mail, data may be altered or lost.
- LCD is manufactured with high precision technology, however, some pixels may appear darker/brighter.
- Connect only specified products to External Port.
- While walking, moderate earphone volume to make sounds around you audible and help avoid accidents.
- When holding handset in use, do not cover Speaker.
- Retract TV Antenna before answering/making calls. Failure to do so may cause injury to yourself or others.

Function Usage Limits

These functions are disabled after handset replacement/upgrade or service cancellation: Camera; Digital TV; Music Player; S! Appli; Lifestyle-Appli.

After a period of disuse, these functions may become unusable.

Mobile Camera

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause the handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.

Copyrights and Others

Right of Portrait

Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with the handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

Copyrights

Sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other copyrighted materials, their respective works and copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplicated materials are limited to private use only. If duplications (including conversion of data types), modifications, transfer of duplicates or distribution on networks are made without permission of copyright holders, this constitutes "Literary Piracy" and "Infringement of Copyright Holder Rights" and a criminal action for reparations and criminal punishment may be filed. If duplicates are made using handset, please observe the copyright laws. Materials captured with handset camera are also subject to the above.

This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 patent portfolio license, AVC patent portfolio license and VC-1 patent portfolio license for the personal and non-commercial use of a consumer to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Visual Standard, AVC Standard and VC-1 Standard ("MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video") and/or (ii) decode MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and non-commercial activity and/or was obtained from a licensed video provider licensed to provide MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 video. No license is granted or implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C. See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this products is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.

Windows Media®, Microsoft®, Windows® and Windows Vista® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.

The abbreviations used for respective operating systems (Japanese version) in this guide are as shown below: Windows Vista® is the abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, and Ultimate). Windows® XP is the abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.

Microsoft Windows operating system is abbreviated as "Windows" in this guide.

Java and all Java based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.



Aplix, microJBlend and JBlend, and all Aplix- or JBlend-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in the U.S., Japan and other countries.

BookSurfing® is a registered trademark of CELSYS Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY Inc.

QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.



microSDHC Logo is a trademark.

Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full® are registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

Machi-Uta® is a registered trademark of KDDI CORPORATION.

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorized Microsoft subsidiary. Content providers are using the digital rights management technology for Windows Media contained in this device ("WM-DRM") to protect the integrity of their content ("Secure Content") so that their intellectual property, including copyright, in such content is not misappropriated. This device uses WM-DRM Software to play Secure Content ("WM-DRM Software"). If the security of the WM-DRM Software in this device has been compromised, owners of Secure Content ("Secure Content Owners") may request that Microsoft revoke the WM-DRM Software's right to acquire new licenses to copy, display and/or play Secure Content. Revocation does not alter the WM-DRM Software's ability to play unprotected content. A list of Revoked WM-DRM Software is sent to your device whenever you download a license for Secure Content from the Internet or from a PC. Microsoft may, in conjunction with such license, also download revocation lists onto your device on behalf of Secure Content Owners.

This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see the bundled "GPL/LGPL 等適用ソフトウェアのライセンスについて" leaflet.



Bluetooth®

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

This product is loaded with Bluetooth™ Stack for Embedded Systems Spec 2.0 by Toshiba Corp.

Powered by MascotCapsule®
MascotCapsule® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION
© 2009 HI CORPORATION. All Rights Reserved.

The image stabilization technology utilized is PhotoSolid, a product of Morpho, Inc.
PhotoSolid is registered trademark of Morpho, Inc.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation.

FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.

 is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.

"Osaifu-Keitai" is a registered trademark of NTT DoCoMo, Inc. in Japan.

NetFront®

Mobile Client Suite

ACCESS™

This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD. ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries. ©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

IrFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

The IrDA Feature Trademark is owned by the Infrared Data Association and used under license therefrom.



This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ Player under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Copyright© 1996-2008 Adobe Macromedia Software LLC. All rights reserved.

Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

SOFTBANK, SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese and the SOFTBANK logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and other countries.

S! Mail, Navi Appli, MOBILE WIDGET, Graphic Mail are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Yahoo! and the "Yahoo!" or "Y!" logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the U.S.

This product is manufactured or sold under license from InterDigital Technology Corporation.

The frequency band used for the Bluetooth® function of 940P is shared with other industrial, scientific or medical equipment (microwave ovens, etc.), and used at premises radio stations, amateur radio station, etc. (hereinafter "other radio stations").

1 Before using the Bluetooth® function, visually check that there are no other radio stations sharing the same frequency band nearby.

2 Should interference occur between 940P and other radio stations, move to another place or stop the Bluetooth® function (stop the transmission) immediately.

3 For additional information and support, contact us at the following number.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center;

From a SoftBank handset, call toll free at 157 for General Information.

From landlines, see ☎P.19-34 "Customer Service".



This radio equipment operates in the 2.4 GHz band using the FH-SS modulation, and its maximum communication distance is 10m.

Other company and product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective owners.

The software contained in 940P is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

"Speed selector" is a registered trademark of Mitsubishi Electric Corporation.

Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

940P meets the government's requirements for exposure to radio waves.

These requirements are based on scientific basis to assure that radio waves emitted from mobile phones and other handheld wireless devices do not affect human health. They require that the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which is the unit of measurement for the amount of radiofrequency absorbed by the head, shall not exceed 2 W/kg*. This limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age or health, and meets the international standard set by International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with World Health Organization (WHO).

All mobile phones, prior to product launch, must be certified as compliant with government requirements as stipulated by the Radio Law.

940P has been granted Technical Regulations Conformity Certification by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER. Its highest SAR value is 0.419 W/kg. This value was obtained by TELECOM ENGINEERING CENTER as part of the certification process. SAR tests were conducted with handset transmitting at its highest certified power level in accordance with testing methods set by the government. While there may be differences between the SAR levels for various handsets, they all meet the governmental requirements for safe exposure. The actual SAR level of the handset while operating can be well below the highest value. This is because the handset is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the Network. Additional information on SAR can be obtained on the following Websites:

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>

Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)

<http://www.arib-emf.org/> (Japanese only)

* Requirements are stipulated in Radio Law (Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment, Article 14-2).

USIM Card.....	1-2
About USIM Card	1-2
USIM Card Installation	1-3
USIM PINs	1-3
Parts & Functions.....	1-4
Handset	1-4
Opening/Closing Handset	1-6
Key Operations in Standby	1-6
Display	1-8
About Battery	1-11
Before Charging	1-11
Battery Installation	1-13
Charging Battery	1-14
Handset Power On/Off.....	1-15
Manner Mode	1-16
Minding Mobile Manners.....	1-16
Manner-related Features	1-16
Activating Manner Mode	1-17
Activating Offline Mode	1-17
Activating Driving Mode	1-17
Handset Menus.....	1-18
Main Menu	1-18
Menu Numbers	1-19
Accessing Functions/Info from Standby	1-20
Touch Panel.....	1-21

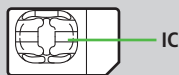
Standby Options & Event Indicators	1-22
Event Indicators.....	1-22
Mobile Widget (Japanese).....	1-22
S! Quick News (Japanese).....	1-22
Shortcuts.....	1-23
Customizing User Interface	1-23
Customized Screen	1-23
Changing Display Font.....	1-24
Private Menu	1-25
Opening Private Menu	1-25
Customizing Private Menu	1-25
Adding Shortcuts.....	1-25
Simple Menu.....	1-26
Activating Simple Menu	1-26
Simple Menu	1-27
Passwords.....	1-28
Phone Password	1-28
Center Access Code	1-28
Security Code	1-28
Multi Task	1-29
Activating Another Function.....	1-29
Ending Current Functions.....	1-29
View Blind	1-30
My Number	1-30

USIM Card

About USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number, and limited Phone Book entry and SMS message storage. USIM must be inserted to use handset or Network services (calling, messaging, Internet, etc.). Turn handset off before inserting/removing USIM Card.

USIM Card



- Insert USIM Card into other compatible SoftBank handset to use information saved on USIM Card.
- Use SoftBank specified USIM Card only; non-specified USIM Cards may not function properly.
- Do not insert USIM Card into other IC card devices. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Keep IC portion clean.
- Do not damage, carelessly touch or short-circuit IC chip; doing so may result in loss of data or malfunction.
- Remove dust/debris with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not place labels, etc. on USIM Card; may cause failure.
- If handset is dropped/subjected to shock, handset may return to Standby. This is not a malfunction.

If **USIM not inserted After power-off Insert USIM** appears, re-insert USIM Card properly then restart handset.

Important

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon service cancellation.
- USIM Card will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- If USIM Card/handset with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center or Global Call Center (☎P.19-34).
- Back up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- USIM Card specifications/performance may change without prior notice.
- Pre-installed S! Appli may be unusable while a different or replacement USIM Card is inserted into handset.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.

Note

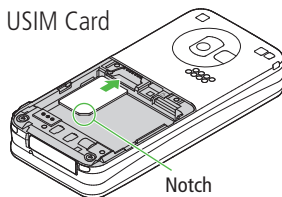
- Some downloaded files may be inaccessible after upgrades/repairs, USIM Card/handset replacement.

USIM Card Installation

- Remove battery (➡P.1-13) then follow steps below.

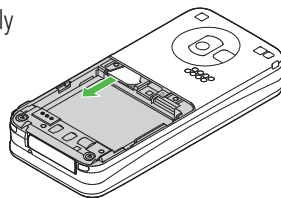
Inserting

- 1 With IC chip down, insert USIM Card



Removing

- 1 Slide out USIM Card gently



Note

- Do not force USIM Card into or out of handset; may damage handset/USIM Card.
- Be careful not to lose the removed USIM Card.
- Avoid touching USIM Card terminals or IC chip; doing so may hinder performance/USIM Card recognition.

USIM PINs

There are two USIM Card security codes: PIN & PIN2

- PIN and PIN2 are set to **9999** by default.
- PIN/PIN2 can be changed (➡P.12-3).

PIN	4 to 8-digit code used to prevent unauthorized handset use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When PIN Authentication is ON (➡P.12-2), PIN entry is required each time handset is turned on (with USIM Card inserted).
PIN2	Required to clear call times/costs or set maximum cost (➡P.18-9).

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK/PUK2)

PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times. Cancel PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock by entering the PIN Unblocking Key (PUK/PUK2) (➡P.12-3).

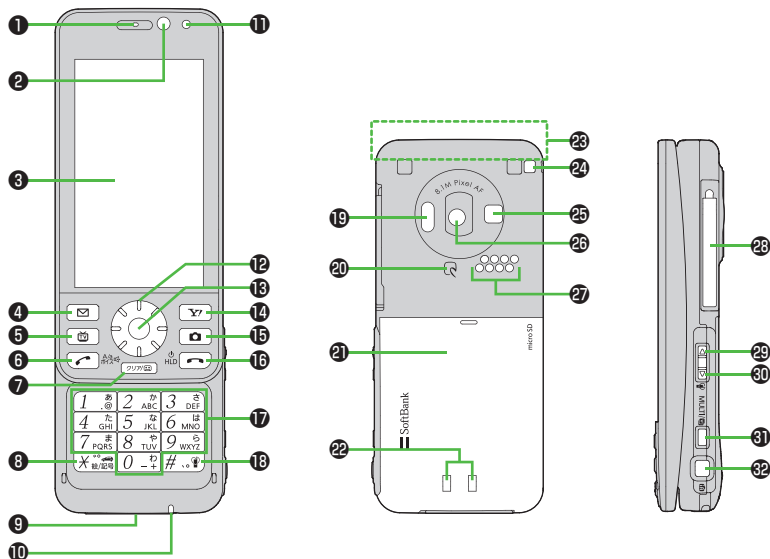
- For information on PUK/PUK2, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➡P.19-34).

Note

- If PUK/PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten times, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled. Write down PUK/PUK2.
- For procedures required to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (➡P.19-34).

Parts & Functions

Handset



Using Earphone/Microphone or Video Output Cable

Connect following accessories (A) and (B) to External Port.

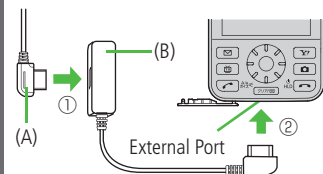
(A) Earphone/microphone or video output cable

(B) Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

<Operation>

① Connect flat plug (A) to flat terminal (B)

② Connect plug (B) to External Port



- Do not press answer button on earphone/microphone when connecting. Doing so may cause earphone/microphone to malfunction. In that case, pull out earphone/microphone, and connect again.

1 Earpiece**2 Inside Camera**

- Use during Video Calls
- Capture a self-portrait

3 Display**4 [Envelope Icon] Mail Key**

- Open Messaging menu
- Execute Upper Left Softkey function (P.viii)

5 [TV Icon] TV Key

- Activate TV
- Execute Lower Left Softkey function (P.viii)

6 [Phone Icon] Send Key

- Initiate or answer calls
- Toggle upper/lower case in text entry windows
- Use Voice Dial

7 [Pencil Icon] Clear/Memo Key

- Delete characters
- Cancel menus
- Use Answer Phone

8 [X Icon] */Pictograph/Symbol/Driving Mode Key

- Enter "X"
- Access pictographs in text entry windows
- Access symbol list from pictograph list
- Toggle Driving Mode

9 External Port

- Connect AC Charger (sold separately), Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (not included) or other accessories here

10 Microphone**11 Light Sensor**

- Detects ambient light

12 [Speed Selector Icon] Speed Selector

- Move cursor or select menus (P.viii)

13 Notification Light/Charging Indicator

- Flashes for incoming transmissions
- Lights for charging

14 [Yahoo! Icon] Yahoo! Keitai Key

- Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu
- Execute Upper Right Softkey function (P.viii)

15 [Camera Icon] Camera Key

- Activate Camera/Video Camera
- Execute Lower Right Softkey function (P.viii)

16 [End/Escapes & Power Key Icon] End/Escapes & Power Key

- Power on/off (P.1-15)
- End calls
- Return to Standby

17 [0-9] Keypad

- Enter phone number/text

18 [#]#/Manner Key

- Enter "#"
- Toggle Manner Mode

19 Infrared Port

- Transfer data via Infrared

20 [Logo Icon] Logo

- Place Logo over a reader/writer when using Osaifu-Keitai® (P.13-11)

21 Battery Cover**22 Charging Terminals****23 Antenna****24 Strap Eyelet****25 Flash/Photo Light**

- Lights/flashes during Camera use
- Use when shooting in dark places

26 Outside Camera**27 Speaker****28 TV Antenna****29 [Up Arrow Icon] Upper Side Key**

- Increase earpiece/TV volume
- Activate Album-Touch

30 [Down Arrow Icon] Lower Side Key

- Decrease earpiece/TV volume
- [Closed Position]

31 [Multi/Widget Icon] (MULTI/Widget) MULTI/Widget Key

- Open TASK MENU
- View list of available widgets

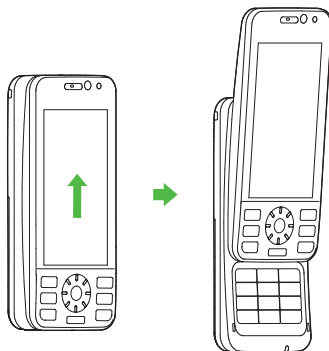
32 [Shutter Icon] Shutter Key

- Activate Camera-Touch
- Capture still images/videos

Opening/Closing Handset

Slide Display up/down.

Do not touch keypad when opening/closing handset; may cause malfunction.





























Note













- Customize handset to answer/end calls, etc. by opening/closing handset (P.18-7, P.18-9).
- Do not touch Display when opening/closing handset with Album-Touch or Camera-Touch activated; may cause malfunction.

Key Operations in Standby

Press or press and hold (more than one second) a key in Standby to execute the following.

Key Operation		Function
	Short Press	Initiate a call
	Long Press	Voice dial
	Short Press	Show/hide widgets
	Long Press (2 + sec)	Turn off power
	Short Press	Open Main Menu
	Long Press	Activate/cancel Keyguard
	Short Press	Play Answer Phone
	Long Press	Activate/cancel Answer Phone
	Short Press	Activate Camera
	Long Press	Activate Video Camera
	Short Press	Activate Digital TV
	Long Press	Activate/cancel IC Card Lock
	Short Press	Open Messaging Menu
	Long Press	Open S! Mail Composition window
	Short Press	Access Yahoo! Keitai
	Long Press	Open Yahoo! Keitai Menu
	Short Press	Select Event Indicator, Shortcut, widget, Status Indicator, S! Quick News ticker
	Long Press	Activate Slideshow-Touch

Key Operation	Function
 Short Press	Open Phone Book search window
 Long Press	Open Phone Book entry window
 Short Press	Open Incoming Call Logs
 Long Press	Open Received address logs
 Short Press	Open Redial logs
 Long Press	Open Sent address logs
 Short Press	Enter "1"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "あ"
 Short Press	Enter "2"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "か"
 Short Press	Enter "3"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "さ"
 Short Press	Enter "4"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "た"
 Short Press	Enter "5"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "な"
 Short Press	Enter "6"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "は"
 Short Press	Enter "7"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "ま"
 Short Press	Enter "8"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "や"
 Short Press	Enter "9"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "ら"
 Short Press	Enter "0"
 Long Press	Open Phone Book page "わ"

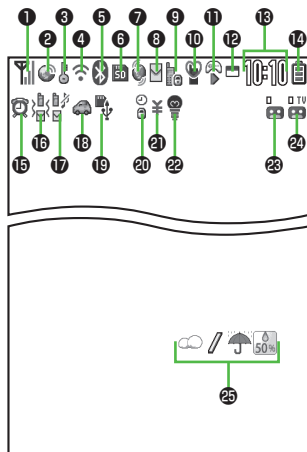
Key Operation	Function
 Short Press	Enter "＊"
 Long Press	Activate/Cancel Driving Mode
 Short Press	Enter "#"
 Long Press	Activate/Cancel Manner Mode
 Short Press	Increase earpiece volume
 Long Press	Activate Album-Touch
 Short Press	Decrease earpiece volume
 Long Press	Decrease earpiece volume ¹ / Activate/Cancel Manner Mode ²
 Short Press	Activate Camera-Touch
 Long Press	—
 Short Press	Activate TASK MENU
 Long Press	Open Widget List

¹ Available only when handset is open

² Available only when handset is closed

Display

Display Indicators



● 15 - 24 are Status Indicators. Access functions from respective indicators (P.1-20).

1 Signal Strength

- Strong Moderate Weak Low
- Offline Mode Active
- Out-of-Range

- 2
 - Packet Transmission in Progress (PC)
 - Dial-up Connection Established on PC
 - 3G/GSM Packet Transmitting
 - Operator (set for Select Operator)
 - Out-of-Range
 - 3G/GSM 3G/GSM Packet Transmission Available*
 - 3G/GSM 3G/GSM Packet Transmission Unavailable*
 - * Appears only while abroad
- 3
 - Secure Content
 - S! Addressbook Back-up Synchronizing
 - Auto Sync Settings Active
- 4
 - PC Site Browser Active
 - Infrared Transmission
 - IC Transmission
 - USB Cable Connected
 - Keyguard Active
- 5
 - Software Update (Notification/Updating/Result)
 - 1415 Voice Mail
 - (Blue) Bluetooth® Device Connected
 - (Black) Bluetooth® Power Save Mode

6 microSD Card

- Inserted
- Reading/Writing Data
- Write-protected
- Unsupported
- Unusable

USB Cable (Not Included) Connected

- microSD Mode
- MTP Mode

During Call

- During Video Call
- During Voice Call

















7 Positioning

- New S! Quick News Information
- New S! Information Channel info























8 Unsent Message














- Unread Message
- Incoming Mail Memory Full

9 Security


-  Privacy Key Lock Active
 -  Personal Data Lock Active
 -  Key Pad Dial Lock Active
 -  IC Card Lock Active
 -  Secret Mode and Secret Data Only Active
 -  Key Pad Dial Lock, Secret Mode and Secret Data Only Active
 -  Key Pad Dial Lock and Personal Data Lock Active
 -  Secret Mode, Secret Data Only and IC Card Lock Active
 -  Privacy Key Lock and IC Card Lock Active
 -  Personal Data Lock and IC Card Lock Active
 -  Key Pad Dial Lock and IC Card Lock Active
 -  Key Pad Dial Lock, Secret Mode, Secret Data Only and IC Card Lock Active
 -  Key Pad Dial Lock, Personal Data Lock and IC Card Lock Active
- 10  Manner Mode Active
-  Manner Mode (set in User Mode)
-  Remote Monitoring Active

11 S! Appli

-  Paused
 -  Active
 -  Auto Start Request Received
 -  Start Request Received while Paused
 -  Start Request Received while Active
- 12  One Function Active
-  Multiple Functions Active
-  Digital TV Active
-  Recording TV Program
-  During Timer Recording
-  TV Recording Paused
-  Music Playback
-  Music Paused
- 13 Time
- 14 **Battery Level**
-  →  →  →  (Red)
- 15  (Red) Alarm Set (Today)
-  (Blue) Alarm Set (After Today)
- 16  Vibration Active (Incoming Call)
-  Vibration Active (Incoming Message)
-  Vibration Active (Incoming Call/Message)

- 17  Incoming Call Ringtone Disabled
-  Incoming Message Ringtone Disabled
-  Incoming Call/Message Ringtone Disabled
- 18  Driving Mode
- 19  microSD Mode set for USB Mode
-  MTP Mode set for USB Mode
- 20  Timer Lock at Close Active
- 21  Call Charge Reached Upper Limit
- 22  Back Light OFF
-  View Blind ON
-  Back Light OFF; View Blind ON
- 23  Answer Phone Active (Number of Answer Phone Messages (Voice Calls))
- 24  Answer Phone Active (Number of Answer Phone Messages (Video Calls))
- 25 Weather Indicator (P.8-3)

Note

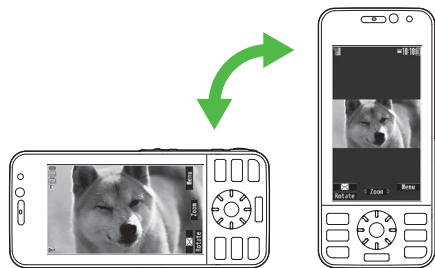
- To show indicator description: **Main Menu**
 ► **Settings** ► **Display Settings**
 ► **Describe Icons** ►  to highlight an indicator

Motion Control

Change handset orientation to switch Portrait/Landscape View.

■ Use Motion Control in These Windows

- Still images/videos/PC movies
- Digital TV
- PC Site Browser
- Yahoo! Keitai (default setting: OFF)
- etc



Note

- Motion Control may not function depending on handset orientation.
- For still images, Motion Control remains active even when handset is turned 90°clockwise or 180°.

Tip

Settings

- Disable All Motion Control Settings
- Customize Motion Control Settings per Function (☞P.18-6)

About Battery


Before Charging

Charge battery before use or after a period of disuse (AC Charger sold separately).

Charging Time & Operating Time Estimates

		3G	GSM
Charging Time		130 minutes*	
Standby Time		640 hours*	370 hours*
Talk Time	Voice Call	220 minutes*	230 minutes*
	Video Call	120 minutes*	—

* Approximate value

- 3G Mode/GSM Mode:  P.2-11
- Charging time is an average measured within temperatures of 5°C to 35°C.
- Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals.
- Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals.
- Talk Time and Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, temperature, etc.).

About Battery

- Clean handset, battery & charger with dry cotton swab.
- Replace battery if operating time shortens noticeably.
- Charge battery at least once every six months.
- Use a case when carrying battery separately.

Charging

- Battery must be installed to charge it.
- It may take longer for charging when handset is on.
- Move charger away from TV/radio if interference occurs.

Battery Time

- Using handset in poor conditions may shorten battery time.
 - Extreme temperatures
 - Impaired handset, battery or Charging Terminals
 - Signal is weak/handset is out-of-range
 - Handset is left mid-operation (not in Standby)
 - Viewing TV, playing music or using S! Appli, etc.



- Extending battery time

Example:

- Turn Back Light Time **OFF** (P.18-5)
- Select **OFF** for Key Tone (P.18-3)

When Battery Runs Out

- **Unless a Call is in Progress**

A message appears and warning tone sounds for 10 seconds. Handset power turns off automatically after one minute; press any key except  or  to cancel warning tone manually. Charge or replace battery.

- If Manner Mode is active, nothing sounds.

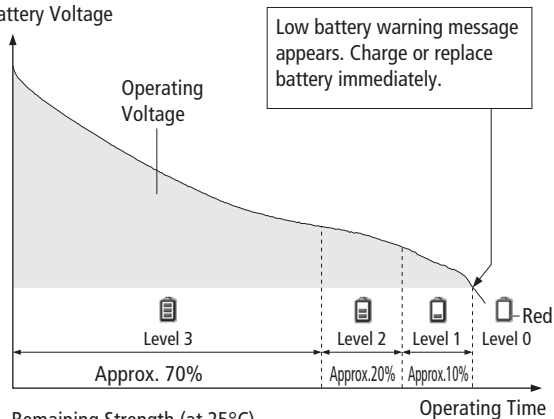
- **During a Call**

A message appears and warning tone sounds via Earpiece or Speaker. After 20 seconds, call ends and handset shuts down in one minute. Charge or replace battery.

Battery Strength Indicator

- Battery Strength indicator changes as remaining usage time decreases. Charge or replace battery when battery level is low (P.1-9) or a message appears on Display.

Battery Voltage



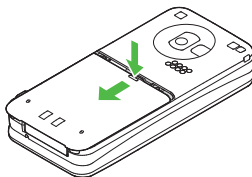
Note

- Alternatively, check battery level from **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Phone Settings** ► **Battery** ► **Battery Level**

Battery Installation

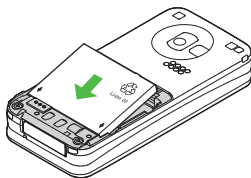
- Always turn off handset power before removing battery.

1 Press and slide to remove cover



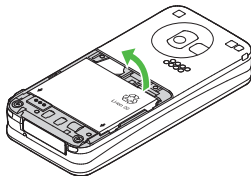
2 Insert Battery

Align battery contacts with handset pins.



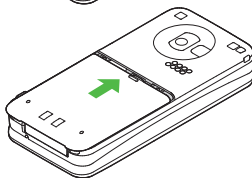
Remove Battery

Lift battery out as shown.



3 Replace battery cover

Cover should click into place.



Note

- Lithium-ion batteries are valuable and recyclable resources.
 - Recycle used lithium-ion battery at a shop displaying the symbol shown to the right.
 - To avoid fire or electric shock, do not:
 - Short-circuit battery
 - Disassemble battery

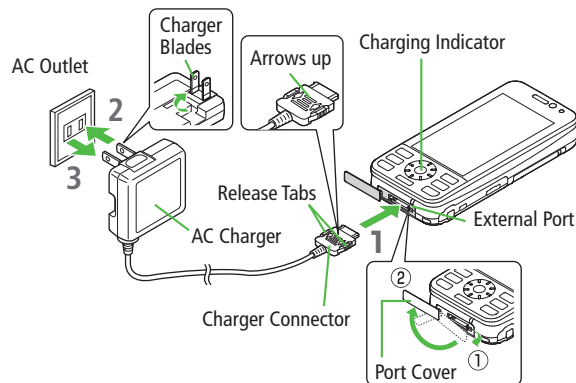


Li-ion 00

Charging Battery

Use only specified AC Charger (sold separately).

Charging Time: Approximately 130 minutes



1 Connect AC Charger to handset

Insert Charger Connector (printed side up) into External Port.

2 Plug AC Charger into AC Outlet

Extend Charger Blades.

Charging Indicator illuminates and charging starts.

When charging is complete, Charging Indicator goes out.

- When Charging Indicator flashes, remove AC Charger and battery from handset then attach them again.

- Charge Sound is heard when charging starts/ends.

When handset is turned off or in Manner Mode, nothing sounds.

3 When charging is complete, unplug AC Charger, then disconnect handset

Squeeze Release Tabs to remove Charger Connector, and replace Port Cover.

Note

- For details, read AC Charger instructions.
- Alternatively, charge battery by using Desktop Holder (not included).

Tip

- Charging Start/End Tone Off (P. 18-3)

Handset Power On/Off

1 Press and hold

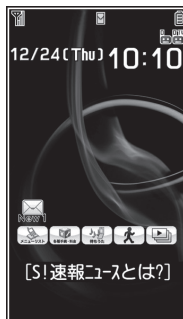
Start-up window appears and handset enters Standby.

- Enter PIN if PIN Authentication is ON (➡P.12-2).

2 Press for 2+ seconds

Handset shuts down.

- Do not turn on handset immediately after turning off. Wait a few seconds.



Standby

■ Initial Setup




The first time handset powers up and Initial setting window appears, select **YES** and set the following: (Each item can be set separately.)

Date & Time* (➡P.18-8)	Set date and time
Phone Password (➡P.12-2)	Enter 9999, and enter new Phone Password (4-8 digits)
Key Tone (➡P.18-3)	Select ON or OFF
Speed Selector Sound (➡P.18-6)	Select a pattern or OFF
Font Size (➡P.18-6)	Set Display font size all at once
Keyguard (➡P.12-4)	Select ON or OFF

* May be automatically set

■ View Information Messages


At time of purchase, information message is provided for your convenience.

-  to highlight an Event Indicator (➡P.1-22), then press 
-  → **Incoming Mail** → **Received** → Select a message
Widget appears in Standby after information message is viewed.

Note


- If **USIM not inserted After power-off Insert USIM** appears, clean and properly re-insert USIM Card then restart handset.
- After a period of inactivity, Display turns off.



Retrieving Network Information

When ,  or  is pressed for the first time in Standby, handset initiates Network Information retrieval;  to retrieve it.

- Update Network Information to use messaging, Internet, etc.
- Update Network Information manually: **Main Menu** ► **Settings**
► **Connectivity** ► **Retrieve NW Info** ► **YES**



Keyguard

Activate Keyguard by pressing and holding  in Standby to avoid key operation error while carrying handset. Open handset to cancel Keyguard temporarily.

-  appears when Keyguard is set.
- To cancel Keyguard, repeat operation.
- To avoid canceling Keyguard even when opening handset:
(Keyguard: P.12-4)

Tip

Settings

- Change Wallpaper ● Add Calendar to Wallpaper
- Change Wallpaper Randomly (P.18-3) ● Change Start-up Window (P.18-4)







Manner Mode

Minding Mobile Manners

Please use your handset responsibly. Use these basic tips as a guide. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.


- Turn it off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner-related Features



Manner Mode ( P.1-17)	Press Manner key to mute handset tones and activate vibration for incoming transmissions.
Vibration Mode ( P.18-2)	Activate in public places, meetings, etc. for silent call/message alerts.
Ringer Volume ( P.18-2)	Mute call/message tones.
Offline Mode ( P.1-17)	Suspend all handset transmissions.
Answer Phone ( P.2-15)	Use to handle incoming calls when inappropriate/unsafe to answer.
Driving Mode ( P.1-17)	While driving, send a voice message informing the caller that you cannot answer the call (Handset does not ring.).

Activating Manner Mode

Press one key to mute handset tones and activate vibration for incoming transmissions.

- Manner Mode settings can be changed (P.18-7).
- When Manner Mode is active,  appears.

1 In Standby, press and hold

- To cancel: Press and hold  again
- To activate/cancel while handset is closed:
Press and hold 



Note


- Shutter click and incoming tone via Earphone (**Level 1**) sound even in Manner Mode.
- When Music Player or Digital TV activates in Manner Mode, confirmation appears asking whether to cancel Manner Mode.
- When **Prefer manner mode** is **OFF** (P.13-7), Alarm sounds even if Manner Mode is active.

Tip

Settings ● Set Manner Mode Type (P.18-7)

Activating Offline Mode

Temporarily suspend all handset transmissions; when active, all calls/messages and incoming information are blocked.

- When Offline Mode is active,  appears.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Offline Mode

1 YES

- To cancel: Follow the same steps.

Note

- Offline Mode disables Bluetooth®/Infrared/IC transmissions. Bluetooth® handsfree devices cannot be used either.

Activating Driving Mode

Handset does not ring for incoming calls. Voice guidance informs the caller you are unavailable and handset records voice/video messages.

- When Driving Mode is active,  appears.

1 In Standby, press and hold

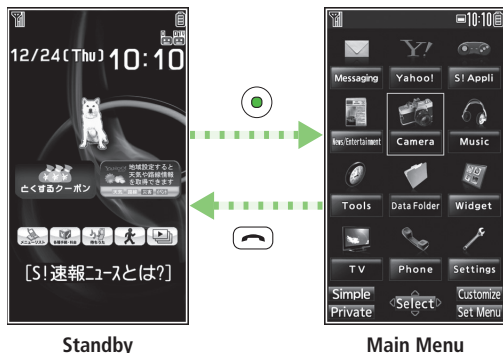
- To cancel: Press and hold  again






Note

- When Answer Phone memory is full, incoming calls are rejected.
- Check ringtone when earphone/microphone is connected.

Handset Menus

Main Menu















- 1 **In Standby,**  Main Menu appears.
 - To change Main Menu theme:
 **[Set Menu]** → Select a theme
- 2  **to highlight an icon** →  Selected function menu appears.
 - To return to Standby: 

Note

- Standby window returns after 15 seconds of inactivity in Main Menu.

Main Menu Icons

Messaging  Create new/view received messages	Yahoo! (Yahoo! Keitai)  Enjoy Mobile Net & PC Site browsing...	S! Appli  Download, set and use S! Appli
News/Entertainment  Use S! Quick News or E-books	Camera  Capture images or record videos	Music (Music Player)  Use Music Player
Tools  Set Alarm or save Calendar entries...	Data Folder  Open files saved on handset/microSD Card	Widget (Mobile Widget)  Use Mobile Widget
TV  View TV or record/timer-record programs	Phone  Access Phone Book, save contact information...	Settings  Adjust/customize handset settings

Tip

Settings

- Change Display Color Scheme ● Change Main Menu Icons
- Change Main Menu Background (P.18-4)

Menu Numbers

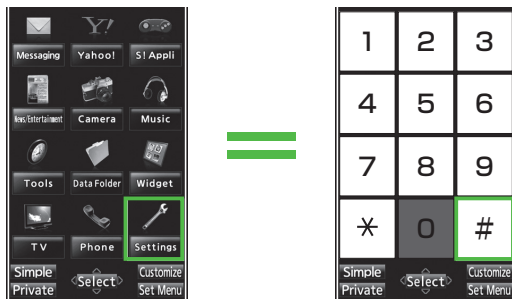
Use keypad to select functions or menu items.

Unnumbered Menu Items

When numbers do not appear, select items as shown.

Main Menu

(#) to select **Settings** from Main Menu



- Press (0) to show Account Details. To open Phone top menu, select **Phone** by pressing (2)

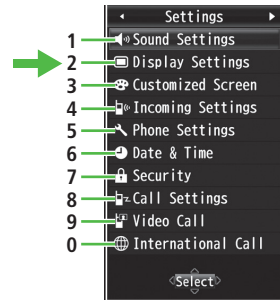
When Menu Icons is Set to Basic or Customize

Menus cannot be selected from Main Menu by keypad.

Open menu items by entering specific number in Main Menu (Quick Open Menu: P.19-14).

Top Menu Opened from Main Menu

(2) to select **Display Settings**

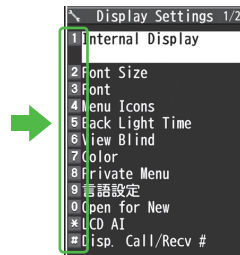


Example: Settings Top Menu

Numbered Menu Items

Press key corresponding to menu number to select a menu.

In Display Settings (from **Settings** Top Menu), (5) to select **Back Light Time**



Accessing Functions/Info from Standby



Select indicators/ticker in Standby to access functions and information.

Available Items

- Event Indicator (P.1-22)
- Mobile Widget (P.7-2)
- S! Quick News (P.8-4)
- S! Information Channel/Weather (P.8-2)
- Shortcuts (P.1-23)
- Status Indicators (P.1-8)

1 In Standby,





Pointer () appears.

- Press  or  to return to Standby (Pointer disappears).

2 Use to move pointer () to an indicator, icon or ticker →

 [Select]

Indicator, icon or ticker is selected. Function name appears.

- Press and hold  to move pointer () continuously
- To cancel selection:  or 




3 [Select]

Function or information appears.

When Widgets Do Not Appear

Pointer () does not appear. After Step 1, use  to highlight an item

→  [Select] to show function or information

- To show/hide widgets: 

Using Pointer ()

> In Standby,  →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
to widgets list	Open Widget List
Yahoo!JAPAN Login	Open Yahoo! JAPAN log in window
Stand-by Display	Change Standby wallpaper > Select a folder → Select an image

Touch Panel

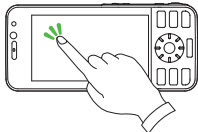
Use Touch Panel in Camera-Touch or Album-Touch mode.

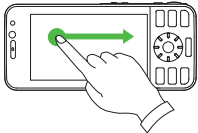
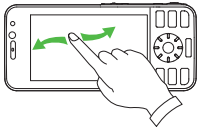
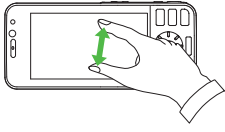
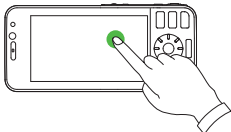
- Remove sheet from Display. Do not affix any stickers on Display.
- Touch Panel operations are invalid while Display backlight is off. Press any key to turn backlight on.
- 0 - 9, *, # keys are unavailable when using Touch Panel with the exception of Phone Password entry.

Notes

- Touch Panel may not respond to sharp objects (e.g. pens), fingernails, gloved fingers or when objects are placed on Display.
- To avoid malfunctions, do not touch Display with wet fingers or press Display too hard.

Touch Panel Operations

Tap [Select items, execute functions, etc.]	Tap Display 
---	--

Drag [Scroll screen, etc.]	Drag item to target location and release 
Swipe [Move, scroll screen, etc.]	Swipe your finger across Display in desired direction 
Pinch [Enlarge/reduce screen]	Spread (enlarge) or pinch (reduce) on Display using two fingers 
Hold [Continuous zoom, etc.]	Touch and hold an item 

1 Standby Options & Event Indicators

Check various indicators and information in Standby.

- To access functions/information from indicators: ☞P.1-20

Event Indicators

Event Indicators appear for missed calls, messages, etc.



Events

Missed calls	Missed calls (☞P.2-14)
New message	New messages (☞P.14-10)
Have Answer Ph Msg	Recorded caller messages (☞P.2-16)
Voice mail	New Voice Mail (☞P.2-19)
Had incoming call(s)	If Missed Call Notification is active, indicator appears for calls missed while handset is off, out-of-range, engaged, etc. (☞P.2-20)
New S! Info Channel	S! Information Channel (received updates) (☞P.8-2)
New Weather	Weather Indicator (received updates) (☞P.8-3)

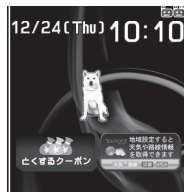
Other Information

- Missed alarm (☞P.13-6)
- S! Appli startup notice (☞P.16-3)
- USB Mode setting (☞P.11-11)
- Missed location information request
- Auto location information notice (☞P.17-3)
- Timer (☞P.5-13)
- Content Key (☞P.10-5)
- Software Update result (☞P.19-13)

Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Paste various widgets to Standby to access information or tools from Standby.

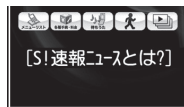
- Mobile Widget: ☞P.7-2
- To show/hide widgets: ☞



S! Quick News (Japanese)

By default, S! Quick News appears at bottom of Display.

- S! Quick News: ☞P.8-4
- Show/hide S! Quick News: ☞P.18-18



Shortcuts

Access frequently used functions from Standby.

- Following shortcuts are set by default:
 - メニューリスト (Menu List)*
 - 各種手続き・料金 (Manage Account/Fees)*
 - 待ちうた (Machi-Uta®)*
 - Pedometer
 - Slideshow-Touch
- * Requires network connection. Available in Japanese only.



Shortcuts

Adding Shortcuts

- Some functions are not available for shortcuts.

- Open a function, [Menu] → **Add shortcut icon → YES**

Scroll Shortcuts

Five shortcuts appear at a time. To scroll more shortcuts, first press [Left] or [Right] to hide widgets, then press [Up] and use [Down] to scroll shortcuts.

Editing/Deleting Shortcuts

- In Standby, [Home] → [Up] to move pointer → Highlight a shortcut
- [Menu] [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Edit title	> Edit title
Sort	> Select an item → Select a target → [Finish] → YES
Delete this	> YES
Delete all	> YES

Customizing User Interface

Customized Screen

Download and set Customized Screen to personalize user interface, ringtone, etc., to a selected theme.

Downloading Customized Screen





Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Customized Screen

- Customized Screen → YES**

Website providing characters or applications appears.
Follow onscreen instructions.

- To manage Customized Screen applications in Data Folder:
P.10-11

Setting Customized Screen

- 1 In Standby, 
- 2  [Customize] → *Customized Screen*
- 3 Highlight a theme →  [Set]
 - To toggle thumbnail and list:  [Change]
- 4 **YES**

Note

- Customized Screen cannot be set when battery is low.
- Other functions are not available while switching. For some seconds after switching is complete, all calls/messages may be blocked.
- Alternatively, **Main Menu ► Settings ► Customized Screen**
To cancel, select **Release Settings**.
- When Simple menu is active, Customized Screen settings are not reflected. To reflect settings, cancel Simple menu.

Changing Display Font

Change Display font. Fonts can also be downloaded.

Downloading Fonts

Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings ► Font

1 **Download Font → YES**

Follow onscreen instructions.

- For details on Font folder (Data Folder):  P.10-11

Note

- While Personal Data Lock is set, fonts cannot be downloaded.

Changing Font

Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings ► Font

1 Select a folder → Highlight a font → [Set]

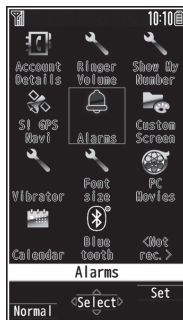
Private Menu

Save frequently used functions in Private Menu.

- Up to 12 items can be saved.
- Change preset functions as needed.

Opening Private Menu

- 1 In Standby, → [Private]
Private Menu appears.
● To return to Main Menu: [Normal]
- 2 Select a menu



Private Menu Window

Change Private Menu Background

- > After Step 1, [Set] → [Menu] → *Change BG image* → Select a folder → Select an image

Customizing Private Menu

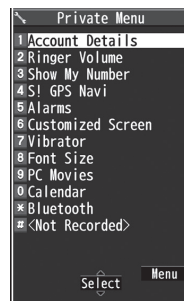
- 1 In Standby, → [Private] → [Set]
- 2 Highlight a target → [Menu] → *Add to menu*
- 3 Select an item

Cancel Functions

- > In Step 2, (highlight a function → [Menu] → *Release this* or *Release all* → YES

Reset Private Menu

- > In Step 2, [Menu] → *Reset menu* → YES



Private Menu Setting Window

Adding Shortcuts

- 1 In Standby, → [Private] → [Set]
- 2 [Menu] → *Add shortcut icon* → YES

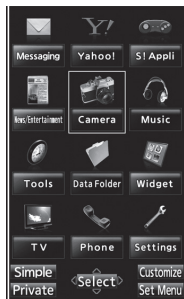
Note

- Alternatively, open Private Menu setting window from
Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Display Settings** ► **Private Menu**

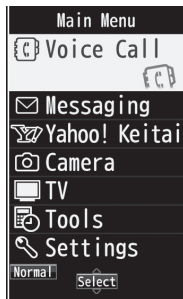
Simple Menu

Activate Simple menu to limit menu options to basic ones.

- Handset is limited to basic operations (P.1-27).



Normal Mode
Window



Simple Menu
Window

Activating Simple Menu

1 In Standby, → [Simple] → YES

2 YES or NO

- Select **YES** to set all items in Font Size (P.18-6) to **Large**.
- To open Simple menu: in Standby.

Cancel Simple Menu

> In Standby, → [Normal] → YES

Note

- Turning off the power does not cancel Simple menu.
- Widgets and SI Quick News do not appear in Standby while Simple menu is active. Customized Screen setting is canceled.

Simple Menu

Simple Menu	Page
Voice Call	
Outgoing Log	2-13
Incoming Log	2-13
Phone Book	4-6
Create New Phone Book	4-3
Answer Phone	2-15
Account Details	1-30
Messaging	
Incoming Mail	14-15
Create New	14-4
Retrieve New	14-14
Drafts	14-15
Sent Messages	14-15
Create New SMS	14-7
Yahoo! Keitai	
Yahoo! Keitai	15-2
Bookmarks	15-8
Saved Pages	15-8
Enter URL	15-4

Simple Menu	Page
Camera	
Take Pictures	6-6
Shoot Videos	6-7
Camera-Touch	6-13
See Pictures	6-12
Watch Videos	6-12
Album-Touch	6-15
TV	
Watch TV	5-5
Timer Recording	5-13
Channel Setting	5-4
Tools	
Data Folder	10-2
Alarms	13-6
Calendar	13-2
Calculator	13-8
Notepad	13-8
Receive via Infrared	11-2

Simple Menu	Page
Settings	
Ringtones/Volume	1-16 18-2
Screen/Fonts	18-3 to 18-6
Call Time & Cost	18-9
Date & Time	18-8
Security	12-2 13-12 19-12
Call Settings	2-18 to 2-22

Passwords

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Security Code are needed for handset use.

Phone Password

<Default> 9999

4 to 8-digit number required to use/change some handset functions.

- Enter number within 15 seconds.
- _ appears for each digit entered.
- Phone Password can be changed on handset (☞P.12-2).

Center Access Code

4-digit number specified at initial subscription; required to access Voice Mail via landlines or subscribe to fee-based information.

- Do not attempt to change Center Access Code. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞P.19-34).

Security Code

4-digit number specified at initial subscription, required to restrict handset services (☞P.2-21).

- Enter number within 15 seconds.
- If entered incorrectly three times, Security Code settings lock; Security Code & Center Access Code must be changed. Reach SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞P.19-34) for details.
- Security Code can be changed on handset (☞P.2-21).

Note

- Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code and Security Code. Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code and Security Code. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.
- For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞P.19-34).

Multi Task

Activate up to three functions from four different groups at the same time.

Group	Function
① Messaging Group	Messaging
② Yahoo! Keitai/S! Appli Group	Yahoo! Keitai/S! Appli/News/Entertainment
③ Tools Group	Music Player*/Camera/Tools/Data Folder/TV/Phone/Mobile Widget
④ Settings Group	Settings

* Functions other than Tools Group may be included.

- [▼] appears above the icons of an active group.
- [] appears for single function in use; [] for multiple functions in use.



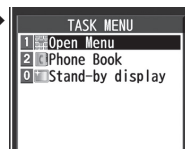
Tip

- Other Functions while Watching TV (P.5-8)
- Using Other Functions while Listening to Music (Play Background) (P.9-7)

Activating Another Function

Activate another function from a different group. Multi Task is unavailable when Simple menu is active.

- 1 [MULTI/] → *Open Menu* → Select a function



TASK MENU Window

Note

- If another function is selected from same group, confirmation appears. Select **YES** to cancel current function and start a new function.

Ending Current Functions

- 1 [END]

■ End All Active Functions

- > [MULTI/] → [END] → YES

View Blind

Activate View Blind to protect Display from prying eyes.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings ► View Blind

1 *ON*

2 Select a level



- Set level 1-3 (Level 3 is the highest level).

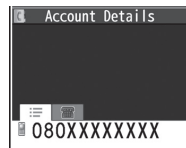
Note

- Alternatively, press and hold (8) to activate/cancel. Previously selected level takes priority.
- View Blind cannot be activated: While in Standby; while S! Appli is active; while Privacy Key Lock is active; during All Reset; when phone number is being entered

My Number

Confirm handset phone number in Account Details (P.4-12). Also confirm data saved in Account Details: name, mail address, etc.

1 In Standby,  → 
Account Details appears.



Making/Answering Voice Calls 2-2

Making Voice Calls	2-2
Outgoing Call Functions	2-3
Emergency Calls (110, 119, 118)	2-4
Answering Voice Calls.....	2-5
Incoming Call Functions.....	2-5
Making Voice Clear (Shikkari Talk).....	2-5

Making/Answering Video Calls..... 2-6

Note	2-6
Video Call Window	2-6
Making Video Calls.....	2-7
Answering Video Calls	2-8
Remote Monitoring	2-8

International Calls 2-9

Calling Abroad from Japan.....	2-9
Calling while Abroad	2-10
Global Roaming Settings	2-10

Engaged Call Functions 2-12

Operations Available during a Voice Call	2-12
Operations Available during a Video Call	2-12

Call Log..... 2-13

Viewing Call Logs.....	2-14
Making Calls from Call Log.....	2-14
Functions Available from Call Log	2-15

Answer Phone/Call Data..... 2-15

Answer Phone	2-15
Call Data	2-16
Answer Phone/Call Data Functions	2-17


Optional Services 2-17

Overview.....	2-17
Call Forwarding.....	2-18
Voice Mail	2-19
Call Waiting.....	2-20
Call Barring.....	2-21
Caller ID	2-22

Making/Answering Voice Calls

Making Voice Calls

Before Calling

- Confirm signal strength (P.1-8)
- If any of these indicators appear:

 →Calls cannot be made (P.1-8, P.1-9, P.19-12)

1 Enter a phone number

- Include area code for all numbers.

080XXXXXXXXX


2 Confirm the number, then

- To adjust volume:  or 

3 to end call

Call Time appears.

Correcting Misentries

Use  to place cursor at digit to delete, then .

Press and hold  to delete the digit and all digits to the right of cursor.

Note

- Do not cover antenna area (P.1-5) with hand or sticker; may weaken signal strength and cause calls/transmissions to be unavailable.

Tip

- Operations Available during a Voice Call (P.2-12)
 - Making Calls from Call Log (P.2-14)
 - Saving Entered Numbers to Phone Book (P.4-5)
 - Making Calls from Phone Book (P.4-6)
- Settings** ● Call Time & Call Cost ● Set Handset Response when Closed during Call (P.18-9)

Outgoing Call Functions

Showing/Hiding Caller ID

- > Enter number → [Menu] → *Notify caller ID* → *OFF* or *ON*
- To cancel setting: [Menu] → *Notify caller ID* → *Cancel prefix*
- Setting Caller ID on/off (Caller ID: P.2-22)

Adding Prefix to Phone Number

■ Save Prefix

- > **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings** ► **Prefix**
 - Highlight <Not Recorded> ► [Edit] ► Enter a name
 - Enter a prefix number
- Up to seven entries can be saved.
- To check entries: Select a saved prefix.
- To delete entries: Highlight a prefix → [Menu] → *Delete this* or *Delete all* (→ For *Delete all*, enter Phone Password) → *YES*

■ Make Calls Using Prefix

- > Enter a number → [Menu] → *Prefix numbers* → Select an entry → Voice Calls: / Video Calls: [V. Call]
- Alternatively, in detail window of Phone Book, Redial, Outgoing Call Logs or Incoming Call Logs, [Menu] → *Prefix numbers* → Select an entry → Voice Calls: / Video Calls: [V. Call]

Example: Save "186" and "184" as prefixes, and add them to phone numbers to show/hide your caller ID when making calls.

Sending Touch-tone Signals

Send touch-tone signals for services such as reserving tickets, checking bank balance, etc. Save number strings to be sent as a touch-tone signal. Use P (pause) to separate numbers when saving.

■ Save Pause Dial

- > **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Phone Settings** ► **Pause Dial**
 - [Edit] → Enter a number string
- To enter a pause (p): Press and hold
- To delete: In Pause Dial window, [Menu] → *Delete* → *YES*

■ Send Pause Dial

- > **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Phone Settings** ► **Pause Dial**
 - [Send] ► Enter a phone number ► ► Once line is connected, press [Send]
- Number string is sent each time [Send] is pressed.
- To send all number strings at one time: Once line is connected, press and hold → *Send at one time*

Emergency Calls (110, 119, 118)

Call 110 (Police), 119 (Fire & Ambulance) or 118 (Coast Guard) even when some handset restrictions are active.

Calls Cannot be Made in Following Cases:

- When **Set Max Cost Limit** is **ON** and charge limit is reached
- In PIN/PIN2, PUK/PUK2 entry window

Emergency Positioning Request

When an emergency call is made from a mobile phone, location is reported to first response agencies such as the police.

- Location information may be inaccurate due to location or signal conditions. Describe location or nearby landmarks.
- Base Station Positioning System is accurate within 100 meters to 10 kilometers. Location information from distant base stations may be inaccurate.
- Function available where first response agencies have completed system installation.
- Dialing 184 before 110, 119 or 118, cancels location report. However, first responders may obtain location information for immediate and serious threats to life.
- Not available for international roaming.
- Requires no separate subscription or transmission fees.

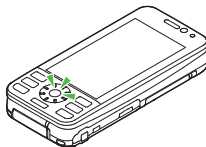
Answering Voice Calls

When a Call Arrives...

Handset rings; Notification Light flashes.

If Caller ID is sent, number appears in Display; if saved in Phone Book, caller's name appears.

When an International call arrives,  appears at upper left of caller's phone number.



1 to talk

- To adjust volume:  or 

2 to end call

Call Time appears.

Adjust Ringer Volume

> While handset is ringing, 

- Volume adjustment is disabled in following cases:
 - During Manner Mode ([P.1-17](#))
 - While **Ringer Volume** is set to **Escalating Tone** ([P.18-2](#))

Note






- When Caller ID is not sent, **Withheld** appears.

Tip

- Operations Available during a Voice Call ([P.2-12](#))
- Rejecting Unknown Callers ● Rejecting Calls without Caller ID ([P.12-13](#))
- Settings** ● Change Answer Setting ● Answer Calls by Opening Handset ([P.18-7](#))

Incoming Call Functions

Following operations are available for incoming calls.

Place Calls on Hold	> 
Answer Phone	>  / 
Call Rejection	>  [Menu] → Call Rejection ● Rejecting Unknown Callers/Rejecting Calls without Caller ID (P.12-13)
Call Forwarding	>  [Menu] → Call Forwarding ● Activate Call Forwarding (P.2-17) beforehand to forward incoming calls to a preset number. If Call Forwarding is not active, call is rejected.

Making Voice Clear (Shikkari Talk)

<Default> ON

Make other party's voice clear according to surrounding noise.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Shikkari Talk

1 ON or OFF

Making/Answering Video Calls

Exchange video/sound with video call-compatible mobiles.

- Send Alternative Picture (still image) or video Image via Outside Camera.

Tip

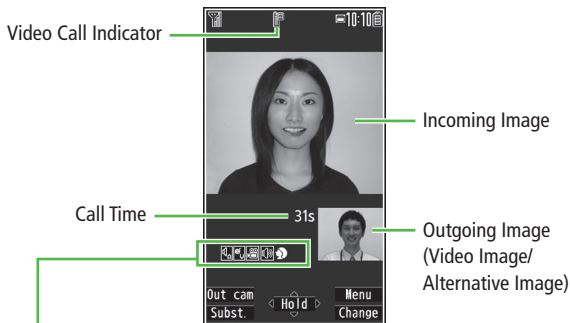
- Remote Monitoring (P.2-8)

Note

- Only available within 3G network coverage.
- 940P is 3G-324M compliant; calls connected via different systems may be disconnected (charges apply).
- Increasing Speaker volume may cause interference. Decrease volume or use earphone.
- Handset may become warm during Video Call. This is not malfunction.
- When incoming/outgoing sound or image fails, try calling again.
- Outside Camera is unavailable while charging or recording TV programs. While Outside Camera is active, charging battery will cancel Camera and Alternative Image is sent. When charging is complete, manually switch Outside Camera on.

Video Call Window

Example: Outgoing Video Call by Default



Indicators

	: Incoming/Outgoing Sound OK		: Alternative Image ON
	(Gray): Incoming/Outgoing Sound NG		: Speaker ON
	: Incoming/Outgoing Image OK		: AV output
	(Gray): Incoming/Outgoing Image NG		: During Bluetooth® handsfree call
	: Video ON		: Portrait
			: Close-up
			: Landscape
			: Night mode

- Image display changes depending on settings.

Making Video Calls

Before Calling

- Confirm signal strength (P.1-8)
- If any of these indicators appear:



→ Video Calls cannot be made (P.1-8, P.1-9, P.19-12)

1 Enter a phone number

2 Confirm the number, then [V. Call]

When answered, outgoing and incoming images appear; other party's voice sounds via Speaker.

- To adjust volume: [Speaker] or [Volume]

3 [End Call] to end call

Note

- Other party's voice sounds via Earpiece in Manner Mode; activate Speaker (P.2-12).

Tip

- Outgoing Call Functions (P.2-3)
- Operations Available during a Video Call (P.2-12)
- Making Calls from Call Log (P.2-14)
- Other Ways to Add New Entries (P.4-5)
- Making Calls from Phone Book (P.4-6)


Settings

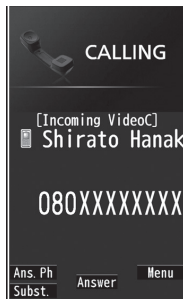
- Change Outgoing Image
- Switch to Voice Call when Video Call Fails (P.18-13)

Answering Video Calls

When a Video Call Arrives...

Handset rings; Notification Light flashes.

If Caller ID is sent, number appears in Display; if saved in Phone Book, caller's name appears. When an International call arrives,  appears at upper left of caller's phone number.



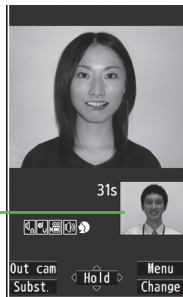
1



Inside Camera Image is sent.

- To send Alternative Image:

 [Subst.]



2



to end call

Note

- Other party's voice sounds via Earpiece in Manner Mode; activate Speaker (P.2-12).

Tip


- Adjust Ringer Volume ● Incoming Call Functions (P.2-5)
- Operations Available during a Video Call (P.2-12)

Remote Monitoring

Use 940P as a monitoring camera to observe a remote place from a phone with 3G-324M compliant Video Call functions. Remote Monitoring starts when 940P receives a Video Call from preset phone number.

Saving Numbers to Activate Remote Monitoring


Main Menu ► Settings ► Video Call ► Remote Monitoring

- 1 Enter Phone Password → **Other ID**
- 2 <Not Recorded> → Enter a phone number → 
- 3 **Ring Tone Duration** → Enter time (sec)
- 4 **Setting** → **ON**
 - Setting cannot be set to **ON** in Manner Mode.


■ Select Numbers from Phone Book/Call Log

- > In Step 2, highlight **<Not Recorded>** → [Menu] → **Refer to**
→ Select an item → Select a number

■ Delete Numbers

- > After Step 1, (highlight a number →) [Menu] → **Delete this** or
Delete all → **YES**



Using Remote Monitoring

- 1 Make a Video Call to 940P from a preset phone number
After ring time elapses, Remote Monitoring starts.
● A Video Call starts if 940P answers before auto answer activates.
- 2 To quit Remote Monitoring,  (caller or recipient side)

International Calls

Calling Abroad from Japan





- Application not required. For details, go to:
http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/call/

- 1 Enter a phone number
- 2 [Menu] → **Int'l dial assist**
Country/region code list appears.
- 3 Select a country/region
- 4 **Voice Calls**


Voice Calls

[V. Call]

■ Enter Country/Region Code Directly

- >  → Press and hold  to display + (IDD Prefix) → Enter a country/region code → Enter a number (omit first 0)
→ Voice Calls:  / Video Calls: [V. Call]
- Do not omit leading 0 to call Italy (country code: 39).

Calling while Abroad

- May require application to Global Roaming Service. For details, go to: http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/

Example: When Roaming Dial Assistant is ON

- Roaming Dial Assistant** (Right) is set to **ON** and **Japan** by default.

1 Voice Calls

Enter a phone number → 

Video Calls

Enter a phone number →  [V. Call]

2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Call to Japan*	Call Japan
Call to set code*	Call a country/region set for Roaming Dial Assistant
As is Call	Manually enter number to call Select when calling within the country/region.

* First **0** is replaced by IDD Prefix and country/region code (e.g. **+81**). (When calling Italy, **+39** is added before first **0**.)

- Confirmation window appears for the first time. Select **NO** to set **Roaming Dial Assistant** to **OFF**.

Note

- IDD Prefix and country/region code can be manually entered in Step 1. Alternatively, save IDD Prefix and country/region code in Phone Book entries.

Global Roaming Settings

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **International Call**

International Call Settings

> **Int'l Dial Assist** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Roaming Dial Assistant	Replace IDD Prefix with + > ON or OFF (→ For ON , select a country/region)
Country/Area Code	Save up to 27 country/region codes > Highlight <Not Recorded> →  [Edit] → Enter a country/region name → Enter a country/region code <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To view an entry: Select a saved country/region name To delete: Highlight a country/region name →  [Menu] → Delete this or Delete all (→ For Delete all, enter Phone Password) → YES
IDD Prefix	Edit IDD Prefix. IDD Prefix is set to 0046010 by default >  [Menu] → Edit → Edit IDD Prefix

■ Network Mode

<Default> Automatically

> **Select Network** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Automatically	Handset automatically selects 3G network in Japan, and available network (3G or GSM) when abroad.
Manually	<p>> Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 3G/GSM: 3G/GSM service area in Japan or abroad. Handset selects an available network automatically. • 3G: 3G service area in Japan or abroad • GSM: GSM service area abroad. Unavailable in Japan

- **Automatically** is recommended.

■ Select Operator

<Default> Auto

> **Select Operator** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Auto	Select an operator automatically
Manual	<p>Select an operator manually</p> <p>> Select an operator</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Operators with X are not available. ● To show operator list: [Update]
Network Re-search	<p>Search available networks</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When Auto is set, handset selects an available operator automatically. When Manual is set, operator list appears.

■ Operator Priority for Automatic Search

> **PLMN Setting** → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add your network	<p>Save currently connected operator</p> <p>> [Finish] → YES</p>
Add from list	<p>> Select an operator → [Set] → Select a network type → [Finish] → YES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To search operators by country/region: [Search] → Select a country/region (To search again in country/region list: [Search] → Enter a country/region name)
Direct input	<p>Save unlisted operators by entering country/region code and operator code</p> <p>> Enter country/region code (3 digits) and operator code (2 to 3 digits) → Select a network type → [Finish] → YES</p>
Change priority	> Select a priority → [Finish] → YES
Delete this/ Delete all	> YES → [Finish] → YES

■ View Operator Name in Standby

<Default> OFF

> **Operator Name** → **ON** or **OFF**

- When **ON** is set, Clock Position is set to **Pattern 1** (P.18-5).

Engaged Call Functions

Operations Available during a Voice Call

Adjust Volume	<p>> / </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Adjust volume within two seconds. ● Adjusted volume is retained even after calls end or handset is turned off.
Place Call on Hold	<p>> [Hold]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To resume call:
Speaker ON/OFF	<p>Toggle Speaker or Earpiece</p> <p>> </p>
Record Conversation	<p>Record for about three minutes per call</p> <p>> Press and hold or [Rec]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To end recording: [Stop], or press and hold ● To play back recorded data: P.2-16
Toggle Manner Mode	<p>> Press and hold (#)</p>
Toggle Handset/Bluetooth®	<p>Toggle handset or Bluetooth® device</p> <p>> Press and hold </p>

Operations Available during a Video Call

Adjust Volume	<p>> / </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Adjust volume within two seconds. ● Adjusted volume is retained even after calls end or handset is turned off.
Place Call on Hold	<p>> [Hold]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To resume call: ● To send Alternative Image: [Subst.]
Speaker ON/OFF	<p>Toggle Speaker or Earpiece</p> <p>> </p>
Record Conversation	<p>Record up to five calls for about 20 seconds each</p> <p>> Press and hold </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To end recording: [Stop] or press and hold ● To play back recorded data: P.2-16
Inside Camera/Outside Camera	<p>> [In cam/Out cam]</p>
Camera/Alternative Image	<p>Toggle Camera Image and Alternative Image</p> <p>> [image/Subst.]</p>
Toggle Image Size	<p>> [Change]</p>
Zoom	<p>Adjust zoom level for Camera Image to be sent</p> <p>> (zoom in) or (zoom out)</p>
Toggle Manner Mode	<p>> Press and hold (#)</p>

Toggle Handset/Bluetooth®	Toggle handset or Bluetooth® device > [Menu] → <i>Talk on BT/Phone</i> → <i>Bluetooth</i> or <i>Phone</i>
Backlight Setting	> [Menu] → <i>Back light</i> → <i>Constant light</i> or <i>15 seconds light</i>
Video Call Setting	> [Menu] → <i>V. Call settings</i> → Follow the steps for selected item (☞P.18-13)
LCD AI	Activate/deactivate auto image compensation > [Menu] → <i>LCD AI</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>
Account Details	> [Menu] → <i>Account details</i>
Key Guide	> [Menu] → <i>Key guide</i>

Call Log

Incoming and outgoing call records appear here. Use these records to call back.

Redial	Up to 30 outgoing call records (Voice and Video) are saved. Older records of same number are deleted.
Outgoing Call Logs	Up to 30 outgoing call records (Voice and Video) and up to 30 outgoing transmission records (64K data and packet transmission) are saved. Older records of same number are also retained.
Incoming Call Logs	Up to 30 incoming call records (Voice and Video) and up to 30 incoming transmission records (64K data transmission) are saved. Older records of same number are also retained.

Indicators for Redial/Outgoing Call Logs/Incoming Call Logs

PHONE	Dialed/received Voice Calls	REMOTE	Received Remote Monitoring calls
MISS *	Missed Voice Calls	64K	Dialed calls of 64K data transmission
MISS *	Dialed/received Video Calls	64K	Received calls of 64K data transmission
MISS *	Missed Video Calls	MISS *	Missed calls of 64K data transmission
MSG	New messages recorded on Answer Phone	64K	Dialed calls of packet transmission
PHONE	Dialed/received international Voice Calls	NO CONNECT	Received calls of 64K data/packet transmission when no external device is connected
MISS *	Missed international Voice Calls		
PHONE	Dialed/received international Video Calls		
MISS *	Missed international Video Calls		
MCN *	Calls received while handset is off, out-of-range, engaged, etc. (☞P.2-20)		

* Unchecked calls are highlighted.

Viewing Call Logs

1 Redial



Outgoing Call Logs

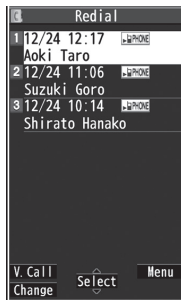
→ **Phone** → **Call Log**
→ **Outgoing Call Logs**

Incoming Call Logs



Records appear.

- To show Received/Sent address logs:



Redial

■ View Missed Calls

> **Main Menu** ► **Phone** ► **Call Log** ► **Incoming Call Logs**
► **Missed Calls**

- **Unknown Calls** appears in Call Log for unchecked calls.

Note

- Newest record appears at top of list. Names appear if saved in Phone Book.
- Call Log records remain even if handset is turned off.
- When the maximum number of records are saved, oldest is deleted first.
- Alternatively, view Incoming Call Logs from **Main Menu**
► **Phone** ► **Call Log** ► **Incoming Call Logs** ► **All Calls**

Making Calls from Call Log

1 Open Call Logs (☞Left)

2 Voice Calls

Highlight a phone number or name →

Video Calls

Highlight a phone number or name → [V. Call]

International Calls

Select a phone number or name → [Menu] →

Int'l dial assist → Select a country/region →

Voice Calls: /Video Calls: [V. Call]

Functions Available from Call Log

Highlight a call record and press [Menu].

- Available functions vary by selected log/record.

Item	Operation/Description
Notify caller ID	Notify or withhold your Caller ID (P.2-3)
Prefix numbers	Add a prefix to phone number before dialing > Select an entry →
Int'l dial assist	Add international dialing prefix > Select a country/region →
Character size	Toggle font size
Add to Phone Book	Save number to Phone Book (P.4-5)
Ring time ¹	Show ring time (missed calls)
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut (P.1-23)
Compose S! Mail	Create S! Mail (From Step 4 on P.14-4)
Compose SMS ²	Create SMS (From Step 4 on P.14-7)
Received address/ Sent address	Show Received/Sent address log
Delete this/ Delete selected/ Delete all	> Delete record(s) in selected list

¹ Available only for Incoming Call Logs

² Message can be sent to SoftBank handsets only

Answer Phone/Call Data

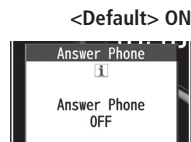
Answer Phone

Record up to five voice messages or up to two video messages (up to 20 seconds per message) on handset.

- When Answer Phone is active, – (Voice Call) or – (Video Call) appears in Standby.
- Unavailable when: handset is off or in Offline Mode; appears. Use Voice Mail (P.2-19).

Activating/Canceling Answer Phone

- Press and hold
 - To toggle setting, repeat operation.



Redirect a Call to Answer Phone

- > [Ans. Ph] or

Note

- Alternatively, activate/cancel from **Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Sound Recorders ▶ Answer Phone Setting ▶ ON or OFF**
- When full, new messages cannot be recorded even if Answer Phone is activated. Delete old messages.
- While Manner Mode (set for User Mode) is active, Answer Phone setting for User Mode (P.18-7) is prioritized.

Playing Messages

When a new message is recorded,
Event Indicator appears (P.1-22)
in Standby.

- Select indicator
- Select a message
Playback starts.
After playback ends, indicator disappears.

**Note**

- Alternatively, press **[F1/F2]** in Standby (for Voice Call messages) or **Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Sound Recorders ▶ Voice Call Data or Video Call Data ▶ Select a recording**

Call Data

- Record one Voice Call (up to three minutes).
- Record up to five Video Calls (up to 20 seconds per message).

Recording Calls

- During a call, press and hold **[F1/F2]**
Recording starts.
- To end recording, **[Stop]** or press and hold **[F1/F2]**

Note

- Alternatively, record a Voice Call by following the steps: **[Rec]** to start and **[F1/F2]** to end

Checking Call Data

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Sound Recorders

- Voice Calls**
Voice Call Data → Call Data
- Video Calls**
Video Call Data → Select a recording
Playback starts.

Answer Phone/Call Data Functions

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Tools** ► **Sound Recorders**

Select Answer Message/Set Ring Time

> **Answer Phone Setting** → **ON** → Select an outgoing message → Enter ring time

- When Answer Phone and an Optional Service (Voice Mail or Call Forwarding) are both active, function with shorter ring time takes priority. For example, if Answer Phone ring time is 18 seconds and Optional Service is 20 seconds, Answer Phone responds first (Priority may change due to signal conditions.).
- Regardless of priority setting, Call Forwarding or Voice Mail takes priority when Answer Phone has reached maximum number of messages.

Delete Recorded Call Data

> **Voice Call Data** or **Video Call Data** → (Highlight an item) → [Menu] → **Erase this**, **Erase rec. msg.**, **Erase Call Data*** or **Erase all** → **YES**

* **Video Call Data** only

Optional Services

Overview

- For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Call Forwarding (P.2-18)	Forward unanswerable calls to a preset number when handset is off, out-of-range, etc.
Voice Mail (P.2-19)	Unanswered calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center as set or when handset is off, out-of-range, engaged, etc. ● Missed Call Notification (P.2-20)
Call Waiting* (P.2-20)	Place the current call on hold and answer a second, or alternate between calls.
Call Barring (P.2-21)	Restrict incoming/outgoing Voice Calls/Video Calls and SMS messages.
Caller ID (P.2-22)	Show or hide your number when calling.


* Separate subscription required.

Call Forwarding

- Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously.
- When forwarding Video Calls, set a destination phone that supports 3G-324M standard video calls. If not, Video Calls are not forwarded.

Activating Call Forwarding

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings**
 ► **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ► **Call Forwarding ON**

- 1 Select a type
- 2 Enter a destination phone number
 -  to select number from Phone Book.
- 3 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Ringer ON	Forward missed calls > Select a ring time → YES
Ringer OFF	Forward all calls without ringing/vibrating > YES



Check Call Forwarding Status

> **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings** ► **Voice Mail/Call Fwding**
 ► **Get Status**

Cancel Call Forwarding

> **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings** ► **Voice Mail/Call Fwding**
 ► **Deactivate All** ► **YES**

Note

- Toll free numbers and international call numbers cannot be saved as a destination number.
- When using Call Forwarding together with Answer Phone, the function with shorter ring time takes priority (Priority may change due to signal conditions.).
- When **Ringer ON** is set, following operations are available while handset is ringing (within ring time):
 - To answer call: 
 - To forward call:  [Menu] → **Call Forwarding**

Voice Mail

- Calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center via Call Forwarding function; Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously.
- Voice Mail is not available for Video Calls.

Activating Voice Mail

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings
► Voice Mail/Call Fwding ► Voice Mail ON

- 1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Ringer ON	Forward missed calls ➢ Select a ring time → YES
Ringer OFF	Forward all calls without ringing/vibrating ➢ YES

■ Check Voice Mail Status

➢ Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Voice Mail/Call Fwding
► Get Status

■ Cancel Voice Mail

➢ Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Voice Mail/Call Fwding
► Deactivate All ► YES

Note

- When using Voice Mail together with Answer Phone, the function with shorter ring time takes priority (Priority may change due to signal conditions.).
- When **Ringer ON** is set, following operations are available while handset is ringing (within ring time):
 - To answer call:
 - To forward call: [Menu] → **Call Forwarding**

Checking Voice Mail Messages

Event Indicator (P.1-22) and appear in Standby when new messages are recorded.

- 1 → Select indicator → **YES**
 - Follow voice guidance.
- Indicator and disappear after messages are checked.



■ View Details

View callers' phone numbers and date/time Voice Mail messages were left before playing messages.

- Activate Missed Call Notification beforehand (P.2-20).
- → **Voice Mail Notif.** → []

Delete ¹⁴¹⁶ Indicator

> **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings** ► **Voice Mail/Call Fwding**
 ► **Delete Voice Mail Icon** ► **YES**

Note

- Alternatively, follow these steps to check Voice Mail:
Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings**
 ► **Voice Mail/Call Fwding** ► **Listen to Voice Mail** ► **YES**

Missed Call Notification

When Missed Call Notification function is active, Event Indicator appears for calls missed while handset was off, out-of range, engaged etc.

- Available only when Voice Mail is active.

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings** ► **Missed Call Notifi.**

1 YES

Handset connects to the Network.

- Follow voice guidance.

When Calls are Received while Missed Call Notification is Active...

Event Indicator appears for missed calls when handset is turned on or comes into range.

Select indicator to view Missed Calls.

- Voice mail** indicator appears when Voice Mail messages are recorded (P.2-19).



Call Waiting

Activating/Canceling Call Waiting

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings** ► **Call Waiting**

1 *Activate* or *Deactivate* → YES

Current status appears.

Check Call Waiting Status

> **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Call Settings** ► **Call Waiting**
 ► **Get Status**

Answering Second Call

1 When tone sounds,

- Press to alternate between calls.
- Press to disconnect active call.
- When the party hangs up, active call ends.
- Press to re-engage the party on hold.
- When a second call comes in while first call is on hold, hold status is canceled and first call resumes.

Reject Second Call

> When tone sounds, [Menu] → *Call Rejection*

Note

- When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is set to **Ringer ON** while Call Waiting is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voice Mail Center or the forwarding number.
- When Voice Mail or Call Forwarding is set to **Ringer OFF**, Call Waiting is disabled.

Call Barring

- **Bar All Outgoing** and **Bar All Incoming** are not available when Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is active (Call Forwarding or Voice Mail takes priority).
- Security Code is required (☎P.1-28).

Activating/Deactivating Call Barring

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call Settings ▶ Call Barring

1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Bar All Outgoing	Restrict all non-emergency calls
Bar All Int'l	Allow only domestic calls
Bar Int'l	Restrict all international calls except to Japan
Bar All Incoming	Reject all calls
Bar All Roaming	Reject calls when outside Japan

2 **Activate or Deactivate** → YES

3 Enter Security Code

■ **Check Call Barring Status**

> After Step 1, **Get Status**

■ **Cancel All Call Barring**

> In Step 1, **Cancel All Barring** → Enter Security Code

■ **Change Security Code**

> In Step 1, **Set Security Code** → Enter current Security Code → Enter new Security Code → Reenter Security Code

Note

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable even while Call Barring for outgoing calls is active.
- If call is attempted when Call Barring is active, warning message appears. It may take longer to appear in some areas. Check Call Barring settings if the message does not appear.

Caller ID

<Default> Network Set

Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings
► Show My Number ► Activate

1 *ON, OFF* or *Network Set*

- *Network Set* Caller ID setting varies by subscription.

■ Check Caller ID Status

> Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings ► Show My Number
► Check Setting

Note

- Alternatively, enter these numbers/symbols before the phone number to show or hide Caller ID:

Show: (1) (8) (6) or (*) (3) (1) (#)

Hide: (1) (8) (4) or (#) (3) (1) (#)

Text Entry

3

Text Entry.....	3-2
Entering Text.....	3-3
Entering Characters	3-3
Pictographs & Symbols	3-4
Smileys.....	3-5
Templates.....	3-6
Additional Features.....	3-6
Conversion Methods (Japanese).....	3-7
Predictive Conversion	3-7
Converting Hiragana to Katakana/Alphanumerics.....	3-9
Narrowing Down Predictive Candidates by Number of Characters.....	3-9
Editing Text.....	3-10
Deleting & Replacing	3-10
Copy/Cut/Paste.....	3-10
User's Dictionary	3-11
Saving User's Dictionary Entries	3-11
Download Dictionary.....	3-11
Activating Downloaded Dictionaries.....	3-11

Text Entry

Enter alphanumerics, hiragana, kanji, katakana, symbols and pictographs.

- Three types of character input methods are available: Mode 1 (5-touch), Mode 2 (2-touch), Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)

In this guide, examples are described in Mode 1 (5-touch).

Mode 2 (2-touch)/Mode 3 (NIKO-touch)

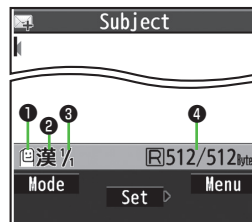
Press two numeric keys to enter a character.

- List of Key Assignments (P.19-15 to 17)

Help

Help describes text entry operations.

> In text entry window, [Menu] → **Help** → Select an item



① Character Input Methods	Operations
2 : Mode 2 (2-touch) : Mode 3 (NIKO-touch) • No icon appears for Mode 1 (5-touch).	Press and hold [Mode]
② Input Modes*	Operations
abc : Alphanumerics 123 : Numbers 漢 : Kanji (hiragana) 加 : Katakana	[Mode]
③ Double-byte/Single-byte*	Operations
1/1 : Double-byte 1/2 : Single-byte	[Menu] → <i>2bytes character</i> <i>(1byte character)</i>
④ Remaining/Maximum Bytes in Message	

* Operations in Mode 3 (NIKO-touch): P.19-17

Entering Text

Entering Characters

Example: Enter 鈴木

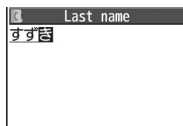
- 1 In alphanumerics mode, twice to switch to kanji (hiragana) mode

す: three times

ず: * → three times → *

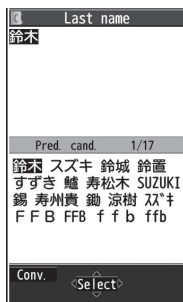
き: twice

* When the next character is on the same key, press first to move cursor.



- 2 to enter Predictive Candidates List

- To change word before converting, press .
- There are four types of word suggestion lists: **Predictive Candidates**, **Conversion Candidates**, **Context Forecast** and **abc/123/Kana Candidates** (見 P.3-7)



- 3 to select 鈴木

Other Input Functions

Enter katakana/alphumerics	[Mode] to cycle input modes → Enter characters
Enter small kana (っ, っ, etc.)	Enter a character → to convert to small character ● Alternatively, press a key repeatedly to enter an assigned small kana.
Enter upper case characters	Enter a character → ● Alternatively, press a key repeatedly to enter an assigned upper case character.
Add ° or °	Enter a character to add ° or ° → for ° or twice for ° ● In single-byte katakana mode, ° and ° are entered as a single-byte character.
Insert line break	[Line FD] to insert line breaks in text
Insert space at end of text	
Insert space within text	repeatedly until single-byte space appears*, or [Menu] → Pictograms/symbols → Space to enter a space (Double-byte (single-byte) space is entered in 2 bytes (1 byte) input mode.)
Toggle characters in reverse order	[Rev] Example: From c, press to toggle as follows: c → b → a → 2...
Move cursor to beginning/end of sentence	[Menu] → Jump → To beginning or To end
Undo	[Undo]

* Space cannot be entered within text in number mode by following the steps above. Use symbol list.

Pictographs & Symbols

- Pictographs do not appear in messages sent to incompatible SoftBank handsets or e-mail addresses.
- Symbol List: P.19-18

1 Open Pictograph List

In text entry window, (*)

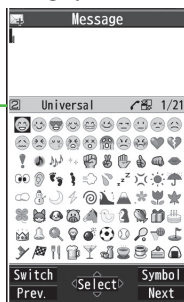
Open Symbol List

In text entry window, press and hold (#),
or

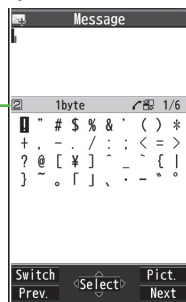
(*) in pictograph list

List Log may appear first.

Pictograph List Number



Symbol List Number



- Functions Available in Pictograph/Symbol List (P.3-5)

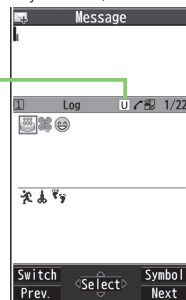
2 to select a pictograph or symbol

Pictograph/Symbol List Log











- In Symbol Log, single-byte symbols appear in upper half of window; double-byte symbols in lower half.
- In List Log, pictographs appear in upper half of window; My Pictograms in lower half (only in S! Mail text entry window).

Pictograph Indicators

- U** Universal (cross-carrier) pictographs
- F** All pictographs
- My** My Pictograms



Functions Available in Pictograph/Symbol List


Toggle pictograph lists	<p>In pictograph list,  [Switch]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Toggle lists: (Log →) Universal pictographs¹ → Full pictographs → My Pictograms² ● Alternatively, press key corresponding to Pictograph List number (1-3) for direct access³.
Toggle symbol lists	<p>In symbol list,  [Switch]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Toggle lists: (Log →) Single-byte symbols → Double-byte symbols ● Alternatively, press key corresponding to Symbol List number (1-3) for direct access³.
Jump to next page	In pictograph/symbol list,  [Next]
Jump to previous page	In pictograph/symbol list,  [Prev.]
Toggle pictograph/symbol list	<p>In pictograph,  /  [Symbol]</p> <p>In symbol list,  /  [Pict.]</p>
Toggle full screen/standard screen	
Close list	

¹ In messages only




² In S! Mail Text field only

³ Log (List Number 1) does not appear if any symbols/pictographs are not entered.

Note

- In number mode, open pictograph list by  [Menu] → *Pictograms/symbols* → *Pictograms*


Smileys

- 1 In text entry window,  [Menu] → *Pictograms/symbols* → *Smiley*
- 2 Select a smiley
 - To show next/previous page:  [Next]/  [Prev.]


Templates

Insert templates (greetings, URLs, emoticons) or edit preinstalled templates.

Inserting Templates

- 1 In text entry window, press and hold 
 - Not available in number mode.
- 2 Select a category → Select a template

Note

- Alternatively, in a text entry window,  [Menu] → *Input assistance* → *Templates* to enter a template

Editing Templates

Main Menu ► Tools ► Templates/Users Dic. ► Templates

- 1 Select a category
- 2 Highlight a template →  [Edit] → Edit template


Reset Edited Templates





- > After Step 1, (highlight a template →)  [Menu] → *Reset this* or *Reset all* (→ For *Reset all*, enter Phone Password) → *YES*

Manage Template Folders

- > In Step 1, highlight a category →  [Menu] → *Edit folder name* → Edit folder name
- To reset folder name,  [Menu] → *Reset name* → *YES*

Additional Features

- 1 In text entry window,  [Menu] → *Input assistance*
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Kuten Code	Enter a character code ( P.19-19) > Enter a character code (4 digits)
Input date/time	Select a style to enter date/time > Select a display style → Enter date/time
Quote phone book	Quote Phone Book entry detail > Select an entry → Check item(s) to quote →  [Finish]
Quote acctn detls	Quote Account Details > Enter Phone Password → Check item(s) to quote →  [Finish]
Bar code reader	Activate Bar Code Reader to insert scanned result ( P.13-15)

Conversion Methods (Japanese)

Predictive Conversion

The following suggestion lists appear while entering text or after a word is fixed.

Before Entering Text*	Predictive Candidates (Pre-text Predict)	Suggests salutations/opening words Example: こんにちは, お疲れさま, etc.
While Entering Text	Predictive Candidates	Lists likely conversions and matching conversions. Likely Conversions: わ → 私, わたし, etc. Matching Conversions: わ → 和, 輪, etc.
	Conversion Candidates	Suggests only matching conversions Example: わ → 和, 輪, etc.
	abc/123/Kana Candidates	Lists alphanumerics/katakana assigned to key (P.3-9)
After a Word is Fixed	Context Forecast	Suggests words likely to follow Example: 私 is fixed → です, の, は, etc.

* Available when you open Message Text window or cursor is at top of Text window. Note that handset Language must be set to 日本語.

- Predictions change with each letter entered.
- Press [☑][Pred.]/[Conv.] to toggle Predictive Candidates List and Conversion Candidates List.

Predictive Candidates

- Time Season Predict function suggests words appropriate for current season and time.
- Set word suggestions for formal or informal words (P.18-12).

Note

- 940P learns entered characters and suggests them for future conversions (P.18-11).

Tip






Settings

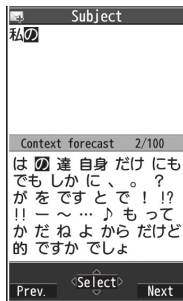
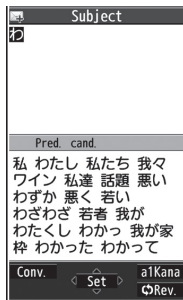
- Disable Learning for Secret Mode/Secret Data Only
- Reset Learned Words ● View Learned Words ● Hide Predictive Candidates and Context Forecast Lists ● Fix Entered Characters Automatically (P.18-11)
- Deactivate Pre-text Predict ● Deactivate Time Season Predict
- Activate Text Expression (P.18-12)



3

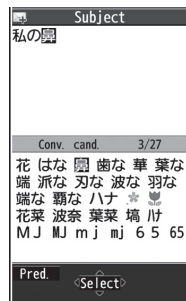
Text Entry


Example: Enter 私の鼻

- 1 In kanji (hiragana) mode, (O) わ is entered and Predictive Candidates List appears.
- 2  to move to Predictive Candidates List →  to select 私 私 is entered and Context Forecast List appears.
- 3  to move to Context Forecast List →  to select の の is entered and Context Forecast List appears.
- 4 (6) → (5) はな is entered and Predictive Candidates List appears.
- 5  [Conv.] Conversion Candidates List appears.




- 6  to move to Conversion Candidates List →  to select 鼻

**If the Word is Not Listed**

Press  to return to hiragana, and segment hiragana to convert separately.

Example: Segment はるか into はる and か, then convert to 春香

- ① Move cursor to る, then convert はる to 春 → 
- ② Convert か to 香 → 





Using Previously Entered Words

Enter the first one or two hiragana to access previously entered words in the list.

Converting Hiragana to Katakana/ Alphanumerics







Enter katakana and alphanumerics in kanji (hiragana) mode. Date and time can be entered quickly.

Example 1: Enter OK

Step	1	2	3	4
Key	 (3 times)	 (twice)	 [a1Kana]	
Display	ふ	ふに	abc/123/Kana Candidates	OK

- Highlight **OK** and press .

Example 2: Enter 10/30, 10:30 or 10月30日

Step	1	2	3
Key	   	 [a1Kana]	
Display	あわさわ	abc/123/Kana Candidates	10/30 10:30 or 10月30日

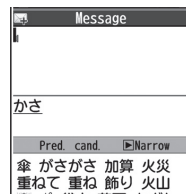
- Highlight a suggestion and press .

Narrowing Down Predictive Candidates by Number of Characters

In kanji (hiragana) mode, narrow down Predictive Candidates by specifying minimum number of characters.



Example: Suggest words with a minimum of seven characters, starting with かさ.

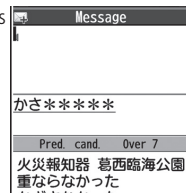
1 Enter かさ → 



2  (five times)

Word suggestions of seven or more characters appear.

- Press  to change number of characters
- To show word suggestions of only seven characters: [Change]



Editing Text

Deleting & Replacing

1 Delete Characters within Lines

Place cursor before a character → 

A character after cursor is deleted.

- Press and hold  to delete all characters after cursor.

Delete Characters from the End of Text

Place cursor at the end of text → 

A character before cursor is deleted.

- Press and hold  to delete all characters before cursor.



2 Enter another character

Copy/Cut/Paste

1 In text entry window, [Menu] → *Copy* or *Cut*

2 Select Text to Copy/Cut

Place cursor before (or after) text to select →

- [Start] → Place cursor after (or before) text →
- [End]

Select All

[All] → [End]

3 Place cursor at target location → [Menu] → *Paste*

User's Dictionary

Save frequently used words/phrases (up to 100 entries).
Saved words/phrases appear among word suggestions.

Saving User's Dictionary Entries

1 In text entry window, **[Y][Menu]** →
Text entry setting → *User's Dictionary*

2 <New>

3 Enter a word → Enter reading

■ Edit User's Dictionary Entries

> After Step 1, highlight a word → **[E][Edit]** → Edit word → Edit reading

■ Delete User's Dictionary Entries

> After Step 1, **[Y][Menu]** → *Delete* → *Delete this* or *Delete all*
(→ For *Delete all*, enter Phone Password) → *YES*

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ► **Tools** ► **Templates/Users Dic.**
► **User's Dictionary**

Download Dictionary

Download dictionaries from P-egg, a download site for 940P users (see below). Activate downloaded dictionaries to add character conversions to conversion suggestions (Japanese).

- P-egg (as of October 2009)

Main Menu ► **Yahoo!** ► **Bookmarks** ►
Panasonic Site (P-egg)

Activating Downloaded Dictionaries

Main Menu ► **Tools** ► **Templates/Users Dic.**
► **Download Dictionary**

1 Select a dictionary

★ appears for active dictionary.

- To cancel: follow the same step

■ Change Title

> In Step 1, highlight a dictionary → **[Y][Menu]** → *Edit title* → Edit

■ View Details

> In Step 1, highlight a dictionary → **[Y][Menu]** → *Dictionary info*

■ Delete Dictionaries

> In Step 1, (highlight a dictionary) → **[Y][Menu]** → *Delete this* or
Delete all (→ For *Delete all*, enter Phone Password) → *YES*

Phone Book

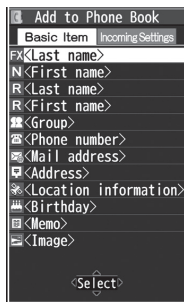
4

Overview	4-2
Saving to Phone Book	4-3
Phone Book Entry Items.....	4-3
Create New Entry	4-3
Other Ways to Add New Entries	4-5
Setting Groups	4-6
Searching/Using Phone Book.....	4-6
Making Calls from Phone Book.....	4-6
Using Phone Book	4-7
Managing Phone Book	4-9
Editing Phone Book Entries	4-9
Deleting Phone Book Entries.....	4-9
Copying/Deleting Phone Book Data	4-9
Phone Book Memory Status.....	4-9
S! Addressbook Back-up.....	4-10
Manual Synchronization	4-11
Auto Synchronization.....	4-11
Viewing Sync Log	4-11
Account Details	4-12
Editing Account Details.....	4-12
Account Details Functions.....	4-12
Voice Dial.....	4-13
Adding Entries to Voice Dial.....	4-13
Searching Entries by Voice Dial.....	4-13

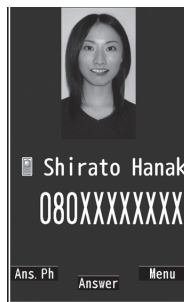
Overview

Save frequently used phone numbers and mail addresses to Phone Book.

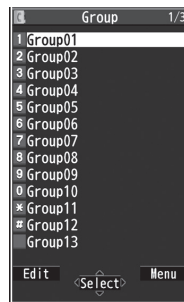
Supplement phone numbers and mail addresses with birthday, street address, an image or notes.



Set tones/image for each entry.



Sort entries into Groups.



Note

● Back-up Important Information

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered entries.

Tip

● Backing up to microSD Card (P.10-19)

Saving to Phone Book

Phone Book Entry Items

Save up to 1000 entries in handset Phone Book; 50 entries to USIM Card Phone Book.

- Available entry items are as follows.

Phone Book Entry Items		Handset	USIM Card
Basic Item	Name (Reading)	○	○
	Group	19	10
	Phone number	4	2
	Mail address	3	1
	Address	○	—
	Location information	○	—
	Birthday	○	—
	Memo	○	—
	Image	100	—
	Memory number	000 - 999	—
Incoming Settings	Ringtone	○	—
	Vibrator		
	Notification Light		
	Screen		
	Msg Ringtone		
	Msg Vibrator		
	Msg Notif. Light		
	Answer message		


○: Can be saved —: Cannot be saved

- Phone Book entries in USIM Card can also be used in another SoftBank handset.


Create New Entry

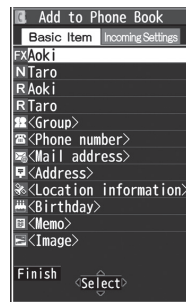
Save new entries to handset or USIM Card Phone Book.

- When saving to USIM Card Phone Book, set **Save Settings** to **USIM** or **Ask Every Time** beforehand (P.18-12).

1 Press and hold 

2 Enter Last name →
Enter First name

- For handset Phone Book,  to switch Basic item and Incoming Settings tabs.



Handset Phone Book

3 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Last name	Save last name. For USIM Card, enter both first name and last name together >Enter last name
First name	Save first name >Enter first name
Reading (Last/First)	Automatically entered when last/first name is entered. For USIM Card, both readings are entered together. >To change reading, edit

Item	Operation/Description
Group	Categorize/search entries by group > Select a group ● Change group names or set ringtones for individual groups (P.4-6).
Phone number	> Enter phone number (→ For handset, select an icon)
Mail address	> Enter mail address (→ For handset, select an icon) ● Save only phone number if mail address is "phone number@softbank.ne.jp".
Address	Save zip code, country/region, prefecture, city, number/street and additional information > Select an item → Enter each information → Home or Office → For entering other information, [Return]
Location information	Identify handset location and save information. Also, save location record selected from location logs > Select an item · By position loc. → YES → Check information → [Set] (To show information while positioning: When [Use] appears at lower right of display, press [OK]. To retry positioning: [Retry]) · From loc. history → Select a location record to save
Birthday	> Enter birthday
Memo	> Enter memo

Item	Operation/Description
Image	Save a still image to appear for incoming calls > Select an item · Select image → Select a folder → Select a file · Shoot image → Frame subject → [Record]/[]/[]/[] → [Save]/[]/[]/[] → ● Saved still image appears for an incoming call only when Phone Book Image (P.18-7) is ON . If there is an image saved for Screen , the image preferentially appears.
Memory number	> Enter memory number
Ring tone	> Ring Tones → Select a type → Select a folder → Select a ringtone
Vibrator	> Select vibrator → Select a pattern
Notification Light	> Select illumination → Select a pattern
Screen*	> SEL picture → Select a screen type → Select a folder → Select an image ● Saved still image appears for an incoming call whether Phone Book Image is ON or OFF . Phone Book Image setting applies only when still image is saved for Image .
Msg Ringtone	> Ring Tones → Select a type → Select a folder → Select a ringtone
Msg Vibrator	> Select vibrator → Select a pattern
Msg Notif. Light	> Select illumination → Select a pattern
Answer message	> Select answer message → Select a message



* To cancel: Select **RLS picture**

4  [Finish]

Other Ways to Add New Entries

Save currently displayed phone numbers, mail addresses, still images or location information to Phone Book.

Example: Saving Numbers from Incoming Call Logs

1  → Highlight a record →  [Menu] → **Add to Phone Book**

2 **New Entry**

New → Enter details (→ Step 3 on P.4-3)

Add to Existing Entry


Add → Select entry → Enter other details

(→ Step 3 on P.4-3)

- When saving to USIM Card, **Overwrite** appears instead of **Add**.

3 When complete,  [Finish] (→ **YES**)


Note

- Press  [Menu] from a function. If **Add to Phone Book** appears, the information is savable to Phone Book. From a message window, select **Add Address** to save entries; from still image list/still image, select **Set display → Phone Book** to save entries.
- When saving new entries in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only, entries are saved to handset regardless of Save Settings.


Setting Groups

Sort entries by Group. Custom set ringtones/vibrators/notifications per group.

Main Menu ► Phone ► Group

-  appears for USIM Card Group.

1 Highlight a group →  [Edit] → Select an item → Set item

- Enter group name for " Group name."
- For other item operations:  P.4-3

2 When complete,  [Finish]

■ Check Settings

- > Select a group entry, or  [Menu] → *Check setting*
- Settings cannot be checked in USIM Card Group Phone Book.

■ Reset Group Setting

- > Highlight a group →  [Menu] → *Reset group* → YES

Note

- Custom settings unavailable for USIM Card Groups.
- Individually set ringtones are prioritized over those set for groups.

Searching/Using Phone Book





Making Calls from Phone Book

<Default> A-KA-SA-TA-NA

1 

2 Search Phone Book (See below)

- To change search method:  → Select a search method (See below)

Search Method	Operation/Description
A-KA-SA-TA-NA	Search entries by katakana syllabary. Names saved in Roman characters are saved under the 英 tab. > Highlight a reading page ● Alternatively, enter partial reading
Reading	> Enter partial reading → 
Group	> Select a group
Memory Number*	Enter memory (entry) number to search for an entry > Enter a memory number
Name	> Enter partial name → 
Phone Number	> Enter partial phone number → 
Mail Address	> Enter partial mail address → 
2-touch Dial*	Show entries with memory (entry) numbers 000 - 009

* Handset Phone Book only

3 Select an entry

4 

5 Voice Calls

Highlight a phone number →

Video Calls

Highlight a phone number → [V. Call]

Note

- To scroll through entries, enter nothing and press (not available in **Group** or **2-touch Dial**).
- If no matches are found in **Reading** or **Memory Number** method, entries closest to condition appear.
- Once a method is selected, same method retains.

Additional Search/Dialing Methods

Open Tab Assigned to Key from Standby	Press and hold – Open search window assigned to key.
Enter Partial Number from Standby or during Call	Enter partial number →
By Memory Number	→ → Enter a memory number
By Single-digit Memory Number (2-touch Dial)	Enter last digit (–) of memory number 000-009 → Voice Call: /Video Call: [V. Call]

Using Phone Book

Use Phone Book Entries

> → Highlight an entry → [Menu] → Select an item
(See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Add a new entry (From Step 2 on P.4-3)
Sort¹	Change display order > Select an order
Send Ir data²	(P.11-3)
IC transmission²	(P.11-5)
Send to Bluetooth²	(P.11-9)
Copy to microSD²	Copy an entry to microSD Card > YES ● To view copied data: P.10-18
S! Addressbook BkUp	(P.4-10)
Delete phone book	> Select an item → Follow steps for selected option (P.4-9)
Character size	Switch character size to large/standard
Set secret mode/Release secret²	Set/cancel Secret Mode for selected entry ● Entries saved as secret data appear only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only is active (P.12-10).

¹ Available only when search method (P.4-6) is set to **Name, Phone Number** or **Mail Address**

² Not available in USIM Card Phone Book

■ Use Entry Details

> [Menu] → Select an entry → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Notify caller ID	Show/hide caller ID (P.2-3)
Prefix numbers	Make a call using a prefix number (P.2-3)
Int'l dial assist	Set International dial assist (P.2-10)
Restrictions*	Activate restrictions on specified entry (P.12-12)
Edit Phone Book	Edit entry (From Step 3 on P.4-3)
Delete phone book	<p>> Phone number or Delete this → YES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Item names vary by selected item: Mail address/Address/Location info/Birthday/Memo/Image
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut (P.1-23)
Compose S! Mail	Create a message to mail address of selected entry (From Step 4 on P.14-4)
Compose SMS	<p>Create an SMS message to phone number of selected entry (From Step 4 on P.14-7)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Message can be sent to SoftBank handsets only.
Send Ir data*	(P.11-3)
IC transmission*	(P.11-5)
Send to Bluetooth*	(P.11-9)

Item	Operation/Description
Copy to microSD*	<p>Copy an entry to microSD Card</p> <p>> YES</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To display copied data: P.10-18
S! Addressbook BkUp	(P.4-10)
Copy names	Copy a name
Copy phone numbers	<p>Copy an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Item names vary by selected item. Copy mail add./Copy address/Copy location info/Copy birthday/Copy memo
Character size	Switch character size to large/standard
Set secret mode/Release secret*	<p>Set/cancel Secret Mode for selected entry</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Entries saved as secret data appear only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only is active (P.12-10).
Copy to USIM/ Copy from USIM	<p>Copy an entry to USIM Card</p> <p>> YES</p>

* Not available in USIM Card Phone Book

Note

- Insert entry details to a message (P.3-6).

Managing Phone Book

Editing Phone Book Entries

- 1 → Select an entry → [Edit]
- 2 Edit (☞ From Step 3 on P.4-3) → **YES**

Deleting Phone Book Entries

- 1 → Highlight an entry → [Menu] → **Delete phone book**
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Delete this	> YES
Delete select	> Check entries to delete → [Finish] → YES • [Menu] → Select all in tab* , Select all , Release all in tab* or Release all to check/uncheck all entries at a time
Delete all in tab*	> YES
Delete all	Delete all entries (handset/USIM Card Phone Book) including Secret Mode entries > Enter Phone Password → YES → YES

* Available in **A-KA-SA-TA-NA**, **Reading**, **Group** and **Memory Number** search methods (☞ P.4-6)

Copying/Deleting Phone Book Data

Main Menu ► Phone ► Memory Manager

- 1 Enter Phone Password
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Copy	Copy data between handset/USIM Card Phone Book > Copy to USIM or Copy from USIM
Delete	Delete data in handset/USIM Card Phone Book > Phone or USIM

- 3 **Phone Book** → Select an entry*
* To clear, repeat operation.
- 4 [Finish] → **YES**

Phone Book Memory Status

Main Menu ► Phone ► Memory Status

View handset/USIM Card Phone Book memory status.

S! Addressbook Back-up

Back up Phone Book entries to S! Addressbook (network server); synchronize handset Phone Book with S! Addressbook; restore Phone Book after accidental loss/alteration.

- Separate subscription is required for this service.

Notes

- Fully charge battery beforehand (🔋 appears).
- Transmission fees apply to synchronization, backup and restoration.
- **Restore** cancels these Phone Book settings:
Ringtone, Vibrator, Notification Light, Picture, Answer message.
- Subscription to the service activates Auto Sync Settings during network information retrieval to back up edited Phone Book entries. Note that initiating network information retrieval activates Auto Sync Settings even when Auto Sync Settings are **OFF**. When contract is terminated, check if Auto Sync Settings are **OFF** (🔌P.4-11).
- **S! Addressbook is deleted upon contract termination.**
- **Addresses saved in Address field on handset Phone Book are saved to building name field in S! Addressbook.**
- **When number of characters saved in S! Addressbook exceeds maximum number of characters savable on handset Phone Book, excess characters do not appear on handset Phone Book.**

Synchronization/Back-up/Restoration

- Be careful of back-up/restoration timing or selecting a synchronization direction.
- When no handset Phone Book entries exist, executing regular update or selecting **Sync from Client** or **Backup** deletes S! Addressbook.
- When no S! Addressbook entries exist, executing regular update or selecting **Sync from Server** or **Restore** deletes all handset Phone Book entries.

Capacity Disparities

- When the number of savable items varies between handset Phone Book and S! Addressbook, synchronization reflects lower limit.

Transfer to New Handsets

- S! Addressbook Back-up-compatible 3G Handsets: Data remains.
- Other 3G Handsets: Service subscription and data remains, but data is not accessible via handset (accessible via PCs).
- V3/V4/V5/V6/V8 Series: Service subscription is terminated and data is deleted.

Manual Synchronization

Regular Update

Update S! Addressbook and handset Phone Book after adding/editing entries.

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Addressbook BkUp

1 Start Sync

Selecting Sync Type

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Addressbook BkUp ► Details
► Backup/Restore

1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Sync from Client	Send data changed in handset Phone Book to S! Addressbook
Backup	Delete all S! Addressbook entries and save handset Phone Book to S! Addressbook
Sync from Server	Send data changed in S! Addressbook to handset Phone Book
Restore	Delete all handset Phone Book entries and save S! Addressbook to handset Phone Book

2 YES

Auto Synchronization

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Addressbook BkUp ► Details
► Auto Sync Settings

1 ON

- To cancel, select **OFF**

2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Every month	Synchronize monthly at specified time of the date > Enter a date → Set start time
Every week	Synchronize weekly at specified time of the day > Select a day → Enter start time
After Editing PB	Synchronize ten minutes after editing

3 Select a Sync Type → YES

■ View Auto Sync Settings

> In Step 1, **Confirm Settings**

Viewing Sync Log

Main Menu ► Phone ► S! Addressbook BkUp ► Details
► Sync Log

1 Select a log

■ Delete Sync Log

> In Step 1, (highlight a log →) [Menu] → **Delete this** or **Delete all**
(→ For **Delete all**, enter Phone Password) → YES

Account Details

Save phone number, mail address, street address, etc. in Account Details.



Editing Account Details

- 1  → 
- 2  [Edit]
- 3 Enter Phone Password → Edit →  [Finish]
 - Your subscribing phone number cannot be edited or deleted.

Account Details Functions

In Account Details, press  [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit*	Edit Account Details (→ From Step 3 above)
Character size	Switch character size to large/standard
Display all data*	View all saved items such as phone numbers and mail addresses
Copy names	Copy a name
Copy phone numbers	Copy an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Item names vary by selected item. <i>Copy mail add./Copy address/Copy birthday/Copy notepad</i>

Item	Operation/Description
Send Ir data	Send details via Infrared (→ P.11-3) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Alternatively, while Account Details is open, press  [Ir].
IC transmission	Send details via IC transmission (→ P.11-5) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Alternatively, while Account Details is open, press  [ICtrans].
Copy to microSD	Copy details to microSD Card <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > YES ● To display copied data: → P.10-18 ● Account Details is saved as a Phone Book entry.
Erase phone number*	> Select an item → YES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Delete items saved in Account Details ● Item names vary by selected item. <i>Erase mail add./Erase address/Erase birthday/Erase memorandums/Delete image</i>
Reset*	Reset Account Details (handset number remains) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> > YES

* Enter Phone Password if required.

Note

- Insert Account Details information to a message (→ P.3-6).

Voice Dial

Make a call by saying a voice dial name.

Note

- Keep microphone about 10 cm away from your mouth, and pronounce a Voice Dial name clearly. If microphone is too distant, your voice may not be recognized.
- Avoid making sounds unrelated to Voice Dial names (clearing your throat, clicking your tongue, heavy breathing, etc.).
- Say Voice Dial names in quiet places.
- Avoid pressing or brushing keys, or covering microphone with fingers when pronouncing a Voice Dial name.

Adding Entries to Voice Dial

Main Menu ► Phone ► Settings ► Voice Dial

- 1 **<New>** → Select a Phone Book entry
Entries with ★ are already saved in Voice Dial list.
- 2 Enter a Voice Dial name
 - Only katakana entry is available for Voice Dial names.




Edit Voice Dial Names

> In Step 1, highlight a Voice Dial name → [Edit] → Edit name → **YES**

Delete Voice Dial Entries

> In Step 1, (highlight a Voice Dial name →) [Menu] → **Delete this**
or **Delete all** → **YES**

Searching Entries by Voice Dial

- 1 Press and hold  → Say a Voice Dial name
Say the name within four seconds after voice recognition tone sounds. Once Voice Dial is recognized, result appears.
- 2 [Detail] →  to show phone number
- 3 **Voice Calls**
Highlight phone number → 
Video Calls
Highlight phone number → [V. Call]

Tip

Settings

● Activate Voice Dial Automatically ● Activate Voice Dial via Earphone or Bluetooth® Device (P.18-12)

Digital TV

Basics.....	5-2
Initial Setup	5-4
Channel Settings	5-4
Watching TV	5-5
Indicators	5-6
Program List (Japanese)	5-7
Data Broadcast (Japanese)	5-7
Functions while Viewing TV	5-7
TV Links (Japanese)	5-10
Saving TV Links	5-10
Opening TV Links	5-10
Functions Available in TV Link List	5-10
Recording/Playing Programs	5-11
Recording Current Program	5-11
Capturing Screenshots	5-11
Playing Recorded Programs	5-12
Viewing Captured Screenshots	5-13
Timer	5-13

Basics

940P supports One Seg terrestrial digital TV broadcasting.

- Operation descriptions are based on Portrait View.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile phones.
For more information, visit The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

[PC] <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>

[Handset] <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>
(Japanese only)

Features

Watch TV Programs (P.5-5)	Watch One Seg Digital TV on handset.
View Data Broadcast (P.5-7)	Access a variety of program-related information.
Record TV Programs (P.5-11)	Record program/capture still image while watching the program.
Set Timer (P.5-13)	Use Timer to view/record programs. You can easily set Timer by using Program List (P.5-7).

Mobile W-Speed

Frame rate of Digital TV images are automatically enhanced. Enjoy smooth image flow (P.18-14).

- Mobile W-Speed is set to **ON** by default.
- When this function is set to **ON**, full effect of **Image Quality** may not be achieved.
- Depending on broadcasting condition, full effect of this function may not be achieved.
- Disabled during ECO Mode (P.18-14) or AV output (P.11-13).
- Disabled for playing back videos recorded with Mobile W-Speed set to **ON**.

Tip

- Use Other Functions while Viewing TV (P.5-8)

Precautions

- Digital TV is available only in Japan.
- Incoming calls/messages may affect TV image or audio quality while TV is activated.
- Digital TV may be disabled if USIM Card is not installed or SoftBank subscription is terminated.
- SoftBank is not liable for damages from accidental loss/alteration of handset/microSD Card information.
Data saved to handset (TV Links, Channel List, etc.) cannot be restored after repairs or handset replacement. Back up important information.

Signal Reception Areas

TV signal reception may be poor in the following conditions:

- Too far from or close to broadcasting stations.
- Mountain areas or near tall buildings.
- In moving vehicles, underground, in tunnels, etc.
- Near high-voltage wires, neon lights, wireless base stations, railroad tracks or highways.
- Areas with numerous signal obstructions or areas where signal reception is blocked.

When Battery is Running Out

- Warning tone sounds and warning message appears if Digital TV is activated with low battery.
- When battery runs low while programs are on or being recorded, handset operates as follows:
 - While Viewing
Warning tone sounds, and confirmation appears.
 - While Recording
Response differs depending on **Rec. When Low Battery** (P.18-14) setting.
 - Continue Recording** ... Warning tone does not sound and confirmation does not appear.
 - Stop Recording** ... Warning tone sounds and confirmation appears.
- Watching TV while charging may shorten battery life.
- If recording ends due to low battery, recorded portion is automatically saved.

Incoming Transmissions

TV pauses for incoming calls. Resume TV after call ends.

- Incoming calls do not interfere with recording.

Incoming Messages

Notification Light flashes for incoming messages while TV is active or recording is in progress. Ticker also appears in Display.

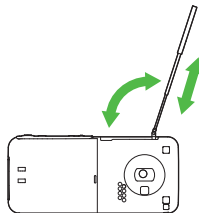
While ticker appears, press to view messages. TV sound plays in background while viewing messages. Press to return to previous window.

- Show or hide ticker (Mail Ticker Display: P.18-14).
- When ticker is set to Off, TV pauses, incoming message window appears and ringtone sounds. Set Receiving Display (P.18-21) to **Operation Preferred** to notify of incoming messages only with .

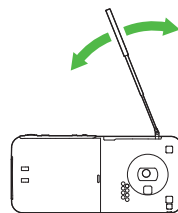
TV Antenna

Extend TV Antenna for optimal viewing.

- Do not force TV Antenna when rotating.
- Retract TV Antenna after viewing Digital TV.



Pull out as far as it extends



Rotate to adjust reception

Initial Setup

Set channels for your area.

- Up to ten Channel Lists can be saved.
- Set channels after extending TV Antenna.

Main Menu ► TV ► Channel Setting ► Select Area

- 1 Select a region → Select a prefecture
- 2 **YES**

Note

- If manual setup fails, try automatic channel setup (👉Below).
- Handset detects a change in reception area after moving to a different area. Set Channel List for that area.

Channel Settings

Automatic Channel Setup

Main Menu ► TV ► Channel Setting ► Automatic

- 1 **YES**
- 2 After channel search, **YES** → Enter title
 - If title is not entered, date (year/month/day/hour/minute) is automatically saved as title.

Using Channel List

From ► Main Menu ► TV ► Channel List

■ Set Channels

- > Select a Channel List
- Channel List is set, and available channels appear.
- Select a channel to access the station.

■ Delete Channel List

- > Highlight a Channel List → [Menu] → **Delete** → **YES**
- Selected Channel List cannot be deleted.

■ Delete Channels from Channel List

- > Highlight a Channel List → [Detail] → Highlight a channel → [Menu] → **Delete** → **YES**
- Channels in selected Channel List cannot be deleted.

■ Edit Title

- > Highlight a Channel List → [Menu] → **Edit title** → Edit

■ Reassign a Remote Control Number (Keypad) to a Channel

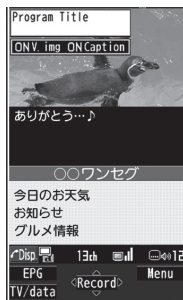
- > Highlight a Channel List → [Detail] → [Menu] → **Remote control #** → Select a channel → Select a new remote control number → [Finish] → **YES**

Watching TV

- Set channels beforehand (➡P.5-4).










1

Viewer appears.



Viewer


2 Select a channel

Direct Channel Access	 -   (Channel 10)  (Channel 11)  (Channel 12)
Previous/Next Channel	
Channel Search	Press and hold  ● To stop:  [Cancel] / 

3 To end TV, → **End TV**

- To play TV sound in the background:  → **Change to BGM**

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu ▶ TV ▶ Watch TV**
- Rotate handset while viewing TV to switch Portrait/Landscape View (90° counterclockwise). While Motion Control Setting (➡P.18-6) is **OFF**, press  to switch Portrait/Landscape View (90° counterclockwise/clockwise).

Tip

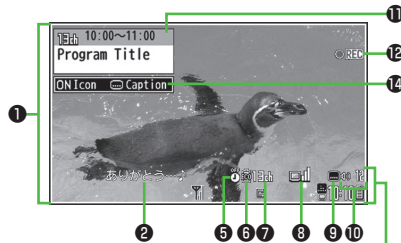
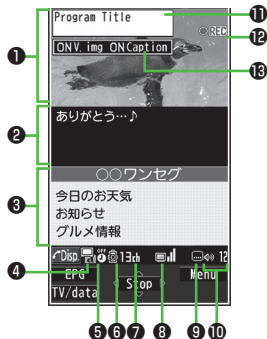
- Use Bluetooth® Device for Wireless Playback (➡P.11-10)
- View handset TV images on a TV set (➡P.11-13)

5

Digital TV

Indicators

- Screenshots are provided for reference only.
Actual handset windows differ in appearance.



Indicator Display

	Item	Description	Operation
1	Image	—	—
2	Captions	—	—
3	Data Broadcast	(P.5-7)	—
4	Data Broadcast Mode	Data Broadcast Mode off Data Broadcast Mode on	[TV/data] ²
5	Off timer	(P.5-9)	—
6	ECO Mode	(P.18-14)	—
7	Channel	(P.5-4) ● When multiple programs are available in the same broadcasting station, "service number/total numbers" appears.	—
8	Signal Strength Level	Strong ← → Weak Out of range	—
9	Receiving Captions	—	—
10	Volume	—	● Adjust volume: [Volume] / [Up] / [Down] ● Mute/Resume: [Mute]
11	Program Title	—	[Program Title] / [Menu] ³
12	Recorder Status ¹	REC Recording REC Timer Set	(P.5-11, P.5-13)
13	Display/Caption ²	Display: ON/OFF/Large Caption: ON/OFF	[Display/Caption] ● Each key press toggles settings.
14	Indicator/Caption ³	Indicators: ON/OFF Caption: Upper position/Lower position/OFF	[Indicator/Caption] ● Each key press toggles settings.

¹ Available only when Data Broadcast Mode is off ² Available only in Portrait View

³ Available only in Landscape View

Program List (Japanese)

Check program schedules and set timer to view/record TV programs.

Main Menu ► TV ► Program List

- Confirmation appears when using Program List for first time. Follow onscreen instructions.
- See Program List Help menu for usage information.

View Program List while TV is Active

> [EPG]

Show Program Information while TV is Active

> Press and hold [EPG] → To return to Viewer,

Data Broadcast (Japanese)

Access a variety of program-related information such as still images and videos.

- Data Broadcast is not available in Landscape View.

1 Activate TV (Data Broadcast Mode off) →

[TV/data]

appears.

- to select information
- To deactivate Data Broadcast Mode: [TV/data]

Note

- Viewing Data Broadcast information requires no fees; however, accessing websites will incur connection fees.

Functions while Viewing TV












Sound Settings

> While TV is active, [Menu] → *Settings* → *Sound* → *Sound Effect* → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Auto Volume	Automatically increase to optimum volume > <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>
Remaster	Adjust sound quality to reproduce original sound > <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>
Listening	Adjust to natural sound when using earphone or Bluetooth® device > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Surround: Reproduce natural and stereophonic sound · Natur 1 or Natur 2: Complement sound specific to earphone to reproduce natural sound · OFF: Turn off Listening setting
Equalizer	Change sound quality when using earphone or Bluetooth® device > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Normal: Reproduce normal sound · H. BASS1: Enhance low-pitched sound · H. BASS2: Enhance low-pitched sound even more · Voice: Make voice clear · Train: Minimize sound leakage



Other Functions

> While TV is active, follow the steps below.

Item	Operation/Description
Access Internet via Yahoo! Keitai	<p>> Press and hold </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To return to viewer: While Yahoo! Keitai is active, press and hold 
Access Internet via PC Site Browser	<p>>  (MULTI/) → <i>Open Menu</i> → <i>Yahoo!</i> → <i>PC Site Browser</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Follow onscreen instructions
Make a Voice Call/Video Call	<p>>  (MULTI/) → <i>Stand-by display</i> → Enter a number →  (For Video Call,  [V. Call])</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Interrupt TV during call. After call, TV resumes. Recording will not be interrupted.
Use Messaging	<p>>  (MULTI/) → <i>Stand-by display</i> → </p>

Functions Available while Viewing TV

> While TV is active,  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Program info	View current program information
Program list	View Program List
Disp.Ch./operation ¹	<p>> Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Channel info: View channel details. Select a channel to watch that Station Channel List: View Channel List ( P.5-4) Channel Setting: Set channels for your area ( P.5-4) Add to ch. list: Add current station to Channel List. Assign current station to lowest available number key. Tune service: Select a program when multiple programs are available from the same broadcasting company

Item	Operation/Description
Data Broadcasting¹	<p>> Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Back to data BC: End Data Broadcast site and return to Data Broadcast window · Reload contents: Reload page (Data Broadcast link) · Certificate: View owner, author, validity period and serial number of certificate used in SSL communication · Images²: Show/hide images on Data Broadcast sites · Sound Effect²: Turn on/off sounds from Data Broadcast/sites · Reset Settings²: Show confirmation on Data Broadcast
TV link list¹	Show TV Link details
Compose S! Mail	Create S! Mail while listening to sound (🔗From Step 2 on P.14-4)

Item	Operation/Description
Settings	<p>> Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Display/operation → Switch display¹: Switch view (switch image size/image off) · Display/operation → Switch TV/data BC¹: Toggle Data Broadcast Mode on/off (🔗P.5-7) · Display/operation → Icons²: Set Indicator Display in Landscape View · Display/operation → AV output: View a Digital TV image on a TV set or other devices (🔗P.11-13) · Video → Brightness: Set Back Light brightness · Video → Mobile W-Speed²: Enhance frame rate of TV images automatically · Video → Image Quality²: Select an image quality · Video → LCD AI: Activate image compensation according to Back Light · Sound → Sound Effect² (🔗P.5-7) · Sound → Main/sub sound: Set main/sub sound · Sound → Switch audio data: Available only when multiple audio data are supported · ECO Mode²: Set power saving mode (🔗P.18-14) · Off timer: When set time passes, confirmation appears asking whether to end viewing/recording TV
Key guide	View key operation guide while watching TV

¹ Available only in Portrait View

² Available from User Settings even while TV is not active (🔗P.18-14).

TV Links (Japanese)

Saving TV Links

- Following function is not available in Landscape View.

1 Switch Data Broadcast Mode on → Select a link

2 **YES**

Follow onscreen instructions to save link.

Opening TV Links

Main Menu ► TV ► TV Link


1 Select a TV Link

- Confirmation appears when Internet access is required. Select **YES** to proceed.
- If TV Link is expired, confirmation appears asking whether to delete link.

Functions Available in TV Link List

Main Menu ► TV ► TV Link

1  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Display detail	Show TV Link title, URL, summary, content type, expiration date
No. of TVlink	Show number of saved TV Links
Delete	<p>> Select an item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Delete this → YES · Delete selected → Check TV link(s) to delete →  [Finish] → YES · Delete all → Enter Phone Password → YES

Recording/Playing Programs

Recording Current Program


Save programs as videos or still images.
Recordings are saved to microSD Card.

- microSD Card: P.10-16
- Save up to 2GB of data at a time.


Recording Time (total)*	Approx. 640 minutes
Savable Files	99 files

* Average recordable time per 2GB of data

- Recording is unavailable when signal strength drops to .


1 Activate TV →  **[Record]**

 appears, and recording starts.

2  **[Stop]** to stop recording

Program is saved to microSD Card.

Note

- In the following cases, recording ends and recorded portion is automatically saved:
 - File size is over 2GB
 - microSD Card memory is full
- Recorded files are not saved to handset.
- Do not remove microSD Card while recording.
- Recording continues even if signal strength level is ; however, images and audio are not saved.
- Recording is disabled during AV output.

Capturing Screenshots

Captured screenshots are saved to handset.

- This feature is unavailable when signal strength is  or Data Broadcast Mode is on.

1 Activate TV (Data Broadcast Mode off) → press and hold 

Note

- Captions cannot be captured.
- Capturing is disabled during AV output.

Playing Recorded Programs

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► TV ► Video

1 Select a video

Playback starts.

- When a playback position is recorded to video, playback starts from the position. Press [FromTop] to play back from beginning.
- When a video contains divided files, file list opens. Select the file to play back.



Example: Video Folder

2 to stop playback

Playback Operations

Volume	
Mute/Cancel Mute	
Fast Forward	(Press once: 10x; Press twice: 30x)
Fast Rewind	(Press once: 10x; Press twice: 30x)
Pause/Resume	
Play Frame by Frame	Pause playback → [Frame] ● Play back frame by frame.
Skip Rewind ¹	Press and hold
Skip Forward ²	Press and hold

Toggle Playback Speed	[Summary View] ● Summary View adjusts playback speed according to audio.
View Title	 ● Time bar also appears. ● Title also appears when views are switched.
Toggle Display	Display title → ● In Landscape View, each key press toggles indicators (icons) and captions on/off. (Each key press also switches time bar position regardless of whether caption is shown.)
Toggle View ³ /Full Display	 ● When Data Broadcast Mode is off, each key press toggles views. ● When Data Broadcast Mode is on, each key press toggles normal/full display.
Data Broadcast Mode On/Off	 ● In Landscape View, turn program title on.

¹ Unavailable if file is under 10 seconds long

² Unavailable if file is under 30 seconds long

³ Available only when Motion Control Setting (P.18-6) is **OFF**.

Viewing Captured Screenshots

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► TV ► Image

- 1 Select an image


Timer



- Set up to 100 timer entries to watch or record programs.

Main Menu ► TV

- 1 **Timer Watching** or **Timer Recording**

- 2  [New] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Start date setting	Set date and time to start and end viewing/recording a program
End date setting ¹	> Select an item · Enter date → Enter a date and time · Choose date → Select a date → Enter date and time
Channel	> Select a channel
Edit title	> Enter a program name
Repeat	> Select a repeat type → For Select day , select a day (days) →  [Finish]
Alarm notice ²	> ON or ON/Set time → For ON/Set time , select an alarm time


Item	Operation/Description
Alarm tone ²	> Select an alarm type → Select a folder → Select an alarm
Alarm on/off ¹	> ON or OFF
Alarm volume	>  to adjust volume • For Timer Recording , Escalating Tone cannot be set.
Activate TV w/ alarm ²	> ON or OFF • When ON is set, Digital TV activates from alarm notification window.
Priority ¹	Set handset response when Timer Recording starts > Recording or Operation • When Recording is set, active function suspends/ends, and recording starts. • When Operation is set, confirmation appears. To suspend/end active function, select YES and  to start recording.

¹ Timer Recording only


² Timer Watching only

- 3  [Finish] → For **Timer Recording**, select **YES** or **YES (confirm once)**

Note

- Select timer entries to check details; [Edit] to edit details.
- Timer Recording does not start if Internet and two other functions are active simultaneously.
- Alarm does not sound for Timer Watching/Timer Recording in following functions. For Timer Recording, complete followings (in parentheses) one minute before timer starts; otherwise, recording does not start.
 - While handset is off (Turn on handset)
 - While Privacy Key Lock is active (Cancel lock)
 - While Personal Data Lock is active (Cancel/change lock)
 - During data transfer (Complete transfer)
 - During Infrared transmission, IC transmission or Bluetooth® transmission (Complete transmission)
 - During software update (Complete update)

Other Timer Operations**Main Menu ► TV****1 Timer Watching or Timer Recording****2** [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Set a timer entry to watch/record a program (P.5-13)
Edit	Edit entry details (P.5-13)
Sort	Sort timer entries > Select an order
Delete this	> YES
Delete past	Timer entries with start/end time set prior to current date/time are deleted > YES
Delete selected	> Check timer entries to delete →  [Finish] → YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → YES
Memory Status*	Show memory status

* Timer Recording only

Checking Timer Recording Results**Main Menu ► TV****1 Recording Result** → Select a result

- Details appear.

Before Using Camera	6-2
Image File Formats	6-2
Notes	6-3
Inside & Outside Camera	6-3
Camera Display Indicators.....	6-4
Pictures/Videos	6-6
Capturing Still Images (Camera Mode)	6-6
Recording Videos (Video Camera Mode).....	6-7
Functions Available while Shooting	6-7
Focus Functions (Outside Camera)	6-11
Changing Focus Settings.....	6-11
Auto Focus Lock	6-12
Viewing Saved Images	6-12
Camera-Touch	6-13
Activating Camera-Touch.....	6-13
Capturing Still Images.....	6-14
Functions Available while Shooting	6-15
Album-Touch	6-15
Viewing Still Images	6-15
Slideshow-Touch	6-18

Before Using Camera

940P features approximately 8.1 Mega Pixel CMOS Auto-focus Camera capable of capturing still images and videos.

Use Album-Touch (☞P.6-15) to view or search still images captured by Touch Panel operations. View images in slideshow.

Method	Description	Album-Touch
Camera mode	Capture still images in Portrait/Landscape View Continuous shooting also available	○
Video camera mode	Record videos in Portrait/Landscape View	—
Camera-Touch (☞P.6-13)	Capture still images in Landscape View Camera settings and focus function also available by Touch Panel operations	○

- Open/close handset in Camera mode/Video camera mode to switch Landscape/Portrait View.
- In Camera-Touch mode or Camera mode (excluding Continuous shooting), captured images are saved right side up regardless of Handset orientation during shooting (some exceptions may apply).

Image File Formats

Still images/videos are saved to Data Folder.

Image Type	File Format	Save Location
Still images	JPEG (.jpg)	Data Folder (Pictures)
Videos	MPEG-4 (.3gp), ASF (.asf)	Data Folder (Videos)

- To save to microSD Card, change Storage setting (☞P.18-16, P.18-17)

Notes

- Remove dust/debris from lens cover with a soft cloth.
- Handset movement may blur images especially in dark places; hold handset firmly.
- Capturing/saving images immediately after handset has been left in a hot place may affect image quality.
- Exposing lens to direct sunlight may affect image quality.
- While Camera is active, Photo light illuminates or flashes. When Inside Camera is used, Notification Light/Charging Indicator flashes. Photo light or Notification Light/Charging Indicator cannot be turned off.

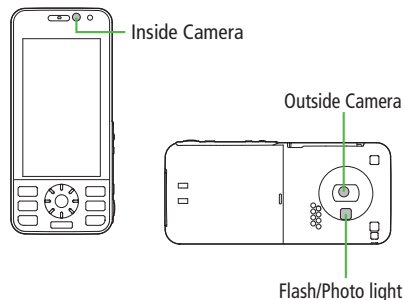
Shutter Click

Shutter click sounds at fixed volume even in Manner Mode.

- To change shutter click sound:  P.18-16, P.18-17

Inside & Outside Camera

Use Inside or Outside Camera. Flash/Photo Light is available.



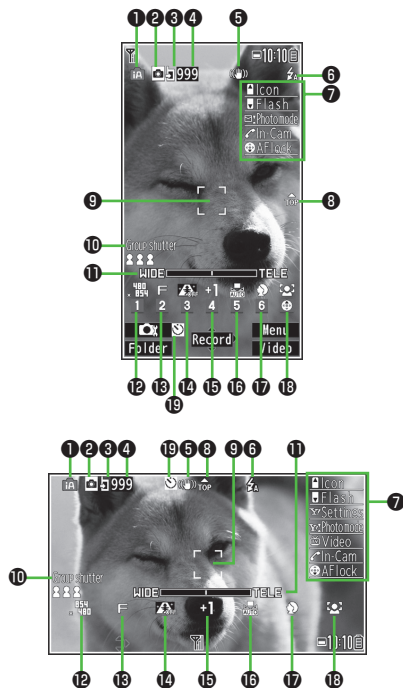
Note

- Camera is not available when battery is low.
- Incoming calls, Alarm and low battery cancel Camera. Captured images/recorded videos are retained. Save data when Camera restarts.
- When left in Viewfinder for three minutes, Camera is canceled and previous window returns.

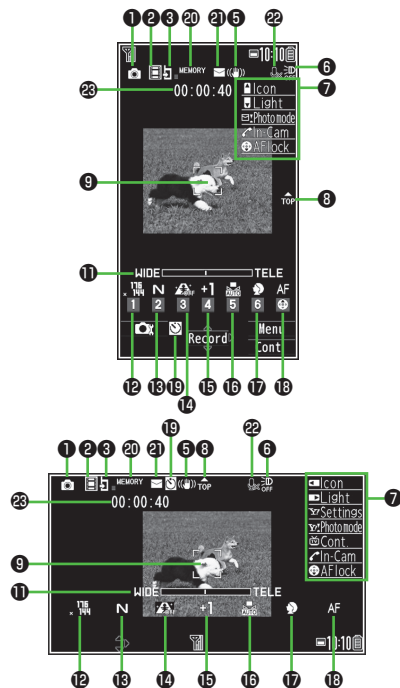
Camera Display Indicators

- Images shown below are for reference only.

Camera Mode



Video Camera Mode



Item	Description	Operation
① Photo mode (P.6-9)	Intelligent Auto Normal Scene My original set. (For Scene/My original set., indicators may vary depending on setting.)	Press and hold [] → Select a mode (→ For Scene/My original set., select an item)
② CHG Camera-mode	Camera mode Video camera mode / Action mode (Auto/ Auto bracket/Manual) (Cont. shooting set.: P.6-6)	[Video/Cont./Camera] ● Toggle Action mode (P.6-10)
③ Storage setting	Phone microSD Card	(9)
④ No. of frames	Show number of remaining frames	—
⑤ Img. stabilizer	Correct camera shake (Available in Outside Camera only)	(P.18-16, P.18-17)
⑥ Flash setting (Still image) Photo light setting (Action/Video)	Auto Forced ON Always light ON Forced OFF	
	ON OFF	
⑦ Key Guidance	Show key operation guidance	—
⑧ Top indicator	Indicate vertical direction	—
⑨ Focus Guide	Auto focus guide AF tracking guide	—
⑩ Auto shutter ¹ (P.6-7)	Love shutter (Sweetheart) Love shutter (Friends) Group shutter (Group)	#
⑪ Zoom bar	Indicate zoom level (P.6-8)	zoom in/out ● Long press: continuous zoom
⑫ Image size ²	Show image size (P.6-8)	(1) → Select a size
⑬ Image quality ²	Normal Fine Super fine	(2) → Select a mode
⑭ High sensitiv. ²	ON OFF	(3) → Select ON/OFF
⑮ Brightness ²	Adjust brightness (Level -3 to +3)	(4) → Select a level
⑯ White balance ²	Auto Fine Cloudy Light bulb Fluorescent light	(5) → Select a mode
⑰ Scene ²	Portrait Sports Food Scenery Night mode	(6) → Select a scene
	Backlight Character Snow Sunset Pet	
⑱ Focus ² (P.6-11)	Face Detection AF Auto Close-up Landscape AF tracking	→ Select a mode
⑲ Auto timer	(P.6-7)	(7) → Toggle ON/OFF
⑳ Memory capacity bar	Indicate memory status (appears in red when memory is full)	—
㉑ File size setting	Mail restrict'n(S) Long time	(P.18-17)
㉒ Movie type set	Record video without audio	(P.18-17)
㉓ Recordable time	Indicate recordable time	—


¹ Key Guidance appears when Photo mode is set to **Intelligent Auto** and Auto shutter is not set.

² Alternatively, [] → to highlight an item → to select a setting

Pictures/Videos

- Confirm battery strength (P.1-12) and memory (P.18-16, P.18-17) before recording. When battery is low, video cannot be recorded.
- Captured images and videos are automatically saved to Data Folder. To select save location each time, turn **Auto save set** to **OFF** (P.18-16, P.18-17).
- Operation descriptions are based on Portrait View.

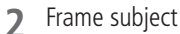
Note

- When using Inside Camera, mirror image appears on Viewfinder. Captured images appear correctly.
- For capturing images by , press firmly.

Capturing Still Images (Camera Mode)



Picture Viewfinder appears.



- To toggle Inside/Outside Camera: 



Shutter click sounds at fixed volume.

Image is automatically saved.

- When **Focus** is set to **Face Detection**, **Auto** or **AF tracking**, Outside Camera automatically focuses on subject before capturing image.



Picture Viewfinder



Return to Standby.

Continuous Shooting

Capture a succession of up to 20 still images automatically with a single press.




- Number of captured images differs depending on image size and Continuous shooting setting (P.6-10).



Images are automatically saved.

- When **Focus** is set to **Auto**, Outside Camera automatically focuses on subject before capturing image.
- To stop shooting halfway: 

Recording Videos (Video Camera Mode)

- Press and hold .
Video Viewfinder appears.
- Frame subject
 - To toggle Inside/Outside Camera: 
-  [Record],  or  to start recording
Tone sounds and  appears.
 - When **Focus** is set to **Face Detection** or **Auto**, Outside Camera automatically focuses on subject before recording begins. During recording, auto focus functions regardless of Focus setting.
-  [Stop],  or  to end recording
Tone sounds.
Video is automatically saved.
 - Recording stops automatically at maximum recording time.
-  to exit
Return to Standby.









Video Viewfinder










Note

- Alternatively,  →  [Video] to activate Video Camera

Functions Available while Shooting

From  Camera mode: 
 Action mode:  ►  [Video] ►  [Cont.]
 Video camera mode: Press and hold 

■ Auto Timer




- >  [Menu] → **Auto timer** → **ON** → Enter time (seconds) → ,  or  (→ For video, ,  or )
- Auto timer tone sounds. After set period of time, shutter is released and recording starts.
- When Auto timer is active,  [Quit] or  to return to Viewfinder without canceling Auto timer.
- Auto timer is not available when **Cont. shooting set.** is set to **Manual**.

■ Auto Shutter (Camera Mode Only)

Shutter automatically releases upon detecting number of people or distance between people (When Photo mode is set to **Intelligent Auto** or **Focus** is set to **Face Detection**).

- >  [Menu] → **Auto shutter** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
OFF	Cancel Auto shutter setting
Love shutter	Shutter releases when two faces move close together. > Friends or Sweetheart <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When Sweetheart is set, distance between two faces is closer than Friends.
Group shutter	Camera detects up to five faces. When more people are in frame, Auto timer activates and shutter releases in three seconds. > Select number of people

- Alternatively, capture still images by ,  or  even when Auto shutter is set (Auto timer activates for Group shutter.).

Zoom

> (zoom in) or (zoom out) to adjust zoom → [Record],
 or

- For continuous zoom: Press and hold or rotate Speed Selector
- Zoom is available during video recording.
- Zoom is disabled when **Image size** is set as follows:
 - Inside Camera: **VGA, HVGA Wide** or **QVGA** (individual mode)
- Zoom may change image quality.
- Maximum zoom levels per image size are as follows.
 Maximum zoom levels in Landscape View are indicated in () if different from those in Portrait View.


Camera mode	Size	Zoom level	Zoom Ratio*
Outside Camera			
Camera (High sensitiv.: OFF)	8M	1-21	2.6x
	6M Wide	1-21	2.6x
	5M	1-21	2.6x
	3M	1-21	2.6x
	2M Wide	1-21	2.6x
	2M	1-21	2.6x
	Stand-by	1-21	2.6x
	VGA	1-21	2.6x
	QVGA	1-31	5.1x
	QCIF	1-31	8.5x
Camera (High sensitiv.: ON)	Sub-QCIF	1-31	12.8x
	2M	1-21	2.6x
	Stand-by	1-21	2.6x
	VGA	1-21	2.6x
	QVGA	1-31	5.1x
	QCIF	1-31	8.5x
	Sub-QCIF	1-31	12.8x

Camera mode	Size	Zoom level	Zoom Ratio*
Continuous shooting	VGA	1-21	2.6x
	QVGA	1-31	5.1x
	QCIF	1-31	8.5x
	Sub-QCIF	1-31	12.8x
Video camera (Img. stabilizer: Auto)	VGA	1-21	1.9x
	HVGA Wide	1-21	1.9x
	QVGA	1-31	2.9 (3.8)x
	QCIF	1-31	5.2 (6.4)x
	Sub-QCIF	1-31	7.2 (9.6)x
Video camera (Img. stabilizer: OFF)	VGA	1-21	2.6x
	HVGA Wide	1-21	2.6x
	QVGA	1-31	3.8 (5.1)x
	QCIF	1-31	7.0 (8.5)x
	Sub-QCIF	1-31	9.6 (12.8)x
Inside Camera			
Camera/Continuous shooting	VGA	1	1.0x
	QVGA	1	1.0x
	QCIF	1-6	1.6x
	Sub-QCIF	1-21	2.1x
Video camera	VGA	1	1.0x
	HVGA Wide	1	1.0x
	QVGA	1	1.0x
	QCIF	1-6	1.9 (1.6)x
	Sub-QCIF	1-21	2.8 (2.1)x

* Values are approximates.

■ Use Flash/Photo Light

Select a Flash/Photo Light setting for Outside Camera.

> In Picture Viewfinder,  [Menu] → **Flash setting** → Select an item (See below)



Item	Operation/Description
Auto	Flash goes off automatically in low-light situations.
Forced ON	Flash always goes off when capturing images.
Always light ON	Photo Light illuminates.
Forced OFF	Flash/Photo Light is disabled.

> In Continuous Shooting/Video Viewfinder,  [Menu] → **Photo light set.** → **ON** or **OFF**

- Flash/Photo light is not available when battery is low.
- When Camera is ended or changed to Inside Camera while a setting other than **Forced OFF** is set, Flash setting is changed to **Auto** next time Camera activates or Outside Camera is used. When **Forced OFF** is set, setting remains.
- Even if **Forced OFF** (Flash setting) or **OFF** (Photo light set.) is set, Photo light illuminates or flashes when Camera is active or during shooting.
- When Photo mode is set to **Intelligent Auto**, **Forced ON** cannot be set.
- When using flash, maintain an appropriate distance from subject of 40 to 100 cm.
- When image is captured at close range or your hand is too close to Flash/Photo Light, image color and brightness may differ in appearance from actual subject.

■ Set Photo Mode According to Scene

>  [Menu] → **Photo mode** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Intelligent Auto	Automatically switch Photo mode according to occasion (in Camera mode) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Indicator is animated when mode changes (Example:  Close-up). ● Mode does not change after Auto Focus Lock. Cancel Auto Focus Lock.
Normal	Capture an image in normal mode
Scene	Adjust brightness and color tone according to scene > Select an item
My original set.	( P.6-10)

Change Continuous Shooting Settings

> [Menu] → **Cont. shooting set.** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Action mode	> Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Auto: Capture multiple still images automatically* · Manual: Capture one by one manually · Auto bracket: Capture nine different still images automatically
Shot interval	Select an interval when Action mode is set to Auto > Select an interval
Shot number	Set number of images when Action mode is set to Auto or Manual > Select a number

* Savable number of images is as follows:

- VGA (480×640): 4
- QVGA (240×320): 5 to 10
- QCIF (144×176): 5 to 20
- Sub-QCIF (96×128): 5 to 20

Save as Original Setting

> Press and hold [OK] → **Photo mode MyOriginal** → Follow the steps (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Save setting	> Highlight a setting → [OK][Save] (→ YES) → Edit title
Open setting	> Select a setting
Edit title	> Highlight a setting → [OK][Edit] → Edit title
View detail	> Highlight a setting → [Menu][Detail]
Delete setting	> Highlight a setting → [OK][Delete] → YES

- Save up to three settings each in Camera mode and Action mode.

Focus Functions (Outside Camera)

Changing Focus Settings

<Default> Camera mode/Video camera mode: **Face Detection**
Action mode: **Auto**

Select a focus setting according to occasion (Except When Photo mode is set to **Intelligent Auto**).


Focus on individual scenes automatically.

- Face Detection (Camera mode/Video camera mode only): For portraits
- Auto: Auto detection
- Close-up: For nearby objects
- Landscape: For distant landscapes
- AF tracking (Camera mode only): Tracks subject automatically

1 In Picture/Video Viewfinder, 

2  to select a setting → 





Note





- Camera focuses on subject at a distance of over 10 cm.
- When Photo mode is set to **Intelligent Auto**, toggle current focus setting and AF tracking by .
- While Camera is focusing, Focus sound is heard in the following situations:
 - When Focus setting is set to **AF tracking**
 - When Photo mode is set to **Intelligent Auto**
 - During video recording

Face Detection

- Detect up to five faces within 2.5 meters.
- Show yellow Focus Guide when a face is detected.
- Automatically focus on one face when more than one is detected (Focus guide turns yellow once focus is on the face.).
- Faces may not be detected in following conditions:
 - Face is tilted.
 - A part of face is covered by glasses, hat, mask or shadow.
 - Face is too small, big or dark for screen.
 - Face is at edge of screen.
 - Subject or handset moves too fast.
- Shoot with Auto focus if detection fails.














AF Tracking

Position AF tracking guide on subject and press . Yellow AF tracking guide appears and tracks moving subject while adjusting focus and exposure for subject. During AF tracking, press  [**Record**],  or  to lock focus on subject and capture an image.

- Alternatively, press  halfway to lock focus, then  to capture an image
- To cancel AF tracking:  or 
- When Camera is unable to track subject (e.g. when subject is out of Viewfinder), AF tracking is canceled.
- Depending on situation, AF tracking may track unintended subject.
- AF tracking is not available when Auto shutter is in use or certain image size is set.

Auto Focus Lock

Bring focus on subject at center of display automatically.
Lock focus on subject, and recompose your picture.

- 1 In Picture/Video Viewfinder, ,  or  halfway
 - ① When in focus, handset sounds.
 - ② Focus Guide turns green, and focus is locked.
 - When out of focus, Focus Guide turns red.
 - To cancel focus locked by  or : 
 - To cancel focus locked by : Release finger from 
- 2 Determine composition
- 3 Capture image in selected camera mode (Camera mode: P.6-6/Action mode: P.6-6/Video camera mode: P.6-7)
 - In Step 1, press  halfway to lock focus, then press  firmly to shoot.

Viewing Saved Images

Main Menu ► Camera

1 **Open Pictures**
Pictures

Open Videos
Videos

2 Select a folder

3 Select a file



Example: Pictures

■ Open Pictures Saved on microSD Card

> In Step 1, **Pictures** → [microSD] → Select a folder

■ Open Videos Saved on microSD Card

> In Step 1, **Videos** → [microSD] → Select a folder

■ Check Still Images in Picture Viewfinder

> In Picture Viewfinder, [Folder]

● To return to Picture Viewfinder: 

Tip

● Editing Still Images (P.10-12)

Camera-Touch

Activate Camera-Touch from Standby to capture still images. Touch Panel operations enable camera settings and focus adjustment.

- Camera-Touch is available only in Landscape View.
- Touch Panel operations: P.1-21

Note

- Press firmly to activate Camera-Touch or capture still images.

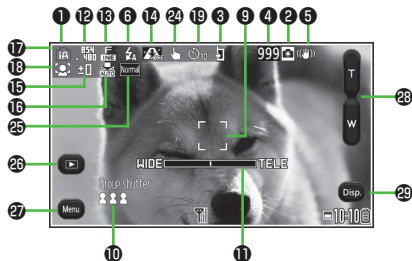
Activating Camera-Touch

1

Viewfinder appears.

Viewfinder

- Image shown below is for reference only.







Item	Operation/Description
1 to 19	(P.6-5)
24 Touch AF/AE (P.6-14)	Valid Invalid
25 Color mode set	<div> <div>Normal Vivid Suntan</div> <div>Normal Vivid Suntan</div> <div>Sepia Natural White</div> <div>Sepia Natural White</div> <div>Mono Monochrome</div> <div>Mono Monochrome</div> </div>
26 Activate Album-Touch	Activate Album-Touch to view captured images <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Use as a slideshow (P.6-18) ● Touch on Display to return to Viewfinder
27 Menu	View function menu
28 Zoom	Change zoom level <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Use or Speed Selector to change level
29 Show Indicator	Show/hide indicators <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Toggle by

- Operations in 1 - 19 are the same as Camera mode/Video camera mode. Toggling settings by key press is not available.
- To change capture settings: P.6-15
- to toggle flash settings (6)

Note

- Alternatively, activate Camera-Touch from **Main Menu** ► **Camera** ► **Camera-Touch**

Capturing Still Images

- 1  → Frame subject
- 2  or  to release shutter
Camera auto-focuses on subject.
Shutter click sounds at fixed volume.
Image is automatically saved.
- 3  to exit

Touch AF/AE

Touch subject to activate AF tracking. Camera adjusts focus and exposure while tracking subject.

- Available only when Touch AF/AE (P.6-15) is set to **Valid**.

1 Touch subject in Viewfinder

When subject is recognized, AF tracking guide turns yellow and begins tracking subject.

- To cancel:  or  on Display



2 or to capture the image

Note

- AF tracking is canceled when subject moves out of Viewfinder.
- Camera may track another subject depending on situation.
- AF tracking is not available while Auto shutter is active or depending on image size.

Functions Available while Shooting

Touch **Menu** in Viewfinder or indicators at upper left of Display to open window below. Follow onscreen instructions.



Note


- Photo mode returns to **Intelligent Auto** next time Camera-Touch activates.
- Focus setting returns to **Face Detection** once Album-Touch is opened from Viewfinder.

Album-Touch

View still images saved in Pictures folder (Data Folder) using Album-Touch. View or search images by Touch Panel operations. Slideshows are also available with a variety of effects.

- Only JPEG files are supported by Album-Touch.
- Touch Panel operations: ➡ P.1-21, P.6-17

Viewing Still Images

- 1 Press and hold 
Folder list appears.



Folder List Window

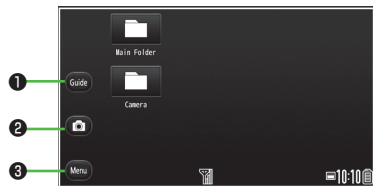
- 2 Touch a folder
File list appears.
- 3 Touch a file
File detail appears.

Note

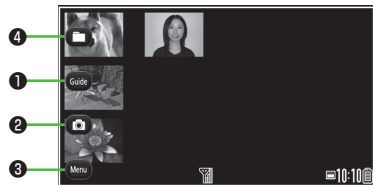
- Alternatively, activate Album-Touch from **Main Menu** ► **Camera** ► **Album-Touch** or **Main Menu** ► **Data Folder** ► **Pictures** ► **Album-Touch**
- View Album-Touch window on TV set (➡ P.11-13).

Album-Touch Functions

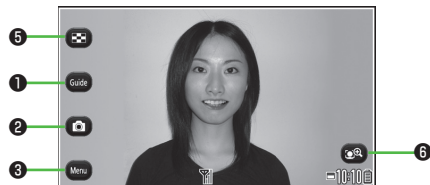
Touch Display for following functions. Follow onscreen instructions.



Folder List Window




File List Window



File Detail Window

	Item	Description
①	Guide	View operating instructions
②	Activate Camera-Touch ¹	Activate Camera-Touch
③	Menu	View function menu
④	Folder List	View folder list
⑤	File List	View file list
⑥	Face Zoom ²	Enlarge faces ● When more than one face is detected, touch indicator to show one face after another.

¹ Available only when Album-Touch is activated by  in Camera-Touch viewfinder.

² Available only when faces are detected

Note

- Each touch in file detail window toggles indicators on/off.
- Face zoom may not be available depending on still image. Faces detected by Beauty plus (P.6-17) may not correspond with those detected by Face zoom.

■ Functions Available in Folder/File List Window

Touch **Menu** in folder/file list window for following functions. Follow onscreen instructions.

Item	Operation/Description
Slideshow	Start slideshow (P.6-18)
Kisekae*	Change theme for folder list
Icon	Toggle indicators on/off ● Alternatively, toggle by

* Folder list window only

■ Functions Available in File Detail Window

Touch **Menu** in file detail window for following functions. Follow onscreen instructions.

Item	Operation/Description
Slideshow	Start slideshow (P.6-18)
Zoom	Enlarge to 200%
Rotate	Each tap rotates image 90° clockwise
Attach to S! Mail	Send file via S! Mail (From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Post blog	Post file to a blog (P.8-7)
Effect	Set slideshow effects
Delete	Delete file
Icon	Toggle indicators on/off ● Alternatively, toggle by
Beauty plus	Detect up to five faces to correct and save

Note

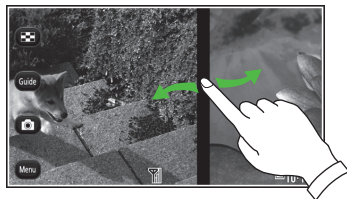
- Some files may not appear right side up when posted to a blog.

Touch Panel Operations

Use Touch Panel operations in Album-Touch.

■ Scroll Page/Screen (Swipe)

- Swipe finger left/right to scroll pages in file list window.
- Swipe finger left/right to scroll screen in file detail window.




■ Zoom (Pinch)

Spread/pinch fingers in file detail window to enlarge/reduce images.



Slideshow-Touch

View files in succession.

- 1 Press and hold 
- 2 **Play All Images**
Menu → Slideshow

Play Selected Folder

Select a folder → **Menu → Slideshow**
Slideshow starts.

Note

- Press and hold  in Standby to show files in all folders.


Slideshow Operations

Touch Display during slideshow to pause and open menu.
Follow onscreen instructions.



Change Slideshow Settings

Touch **Settings** during a pause to access following settings.
Follow onscreen instructions.

Item	Operation/Description
Time	Set time to show each file
Effect	Set effects
Face zoom	Enlarge faces
Random	Show files randomly
Repeat	Repeat slideshow
Icon	Toggle indicators on/off <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Alternatively, toggle by 

Note

- Face zoom may not be available depending on still image. Faces detected by Beauty plus (P.6-17) may not correspond with those detected by Face zoom.

Mobile Widget

Mobile Widget (Japanese)	7-2
Using Widgets	7-2
Pasting Widgets to Standby	7-2
Activating Widgets.....	7-3
Downloading Widgets	7-4
Arranging Widgets in Standby.....	7-4

Mobile Widget (Japanese)

Paste widgets to Standby to access information or tools from Standby.

Network Widget

Some widgets may periodically connect to network, incurring packet transmission fees.

- During transmission, other functions (e.g. Video Calls) may be disabled.

Show/Hide Widget

> In Standby, 

Tip






Settings

- Deactivate Auto Update ● Activate Auto Roaming Abroad
- Hide Confirmation when Roaming Abroad ● Forbid Sending/Receiving Cookies ● Delete Cookies (P.18-18)

Using Widgets

Pasting Widgets to Standby

Paste up to five widgets per sheet. Select from four sheets and organize sheets by theme.

- 1 Press and hold  (MULTI/)
Widget List appears.
- 2 Select a widget →  [Menu] →
Paste on Stand-by → Select a sheet
- 3  to move to target location → 

Delete Widgets from Standby Display

> Main Menu ► Widget ► Settings ► Delete Content






► Select a sheet ► Check Contents to delete ►  [Release] ► YES

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu ► Widget**
 - **Widget Contents** or **Main Menu ► Data Folder**
 - **Widget** to select widgets
- When saving widgets from microSD to Standby, do not remove microSD Card.

Activating Widgets

Selecting Widgets in Standby



- 1 In Standby (widgets shown), 
Pointer () appears.
● To disable pointer:  or 
- 2  to move pointer → Select a widget
Follow onscreen instructions.

■ Toggle Sheets

> In Standby,  →  [Back] or  [Forward]








Selecting Widgets from Widget List

- 1 Press and hold  (MULTI/ )
Widget List appears.
- 2 Select a widget



Widget List

■ Move Widgets in List

> Press and hold  (MULTI/ ) → Highlight a widget →  [Move] →  to determine a target location →  [OK]

Downloading Widgets


Main Menu ► Widget

1 **Widget Store**

Handset connects to the Network, and download site appears. Follow onscreen instructions.

Installing Widgets




Some widgets may require you to install them manually; follow steps below:



- > In download completion window,  [Menu] → **Install**
- Once installation is completed, widgets appear in Widget List. Widget folder in Data Folder includes widgets that are not yet installed.

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu ► Widget ► Widget Contents**
 ► **Download Widget ► YES** or **Main Menu ► Data Folder**
 ► **Widget ► Download Widget ► YES** to download

Arranging Widgets in Standby

- 1 In Standby,  →  to move pointer → Highlight a widget →  [Operate]
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Move	>  to move to a target location → 
Delete frm Standby	> YES
Forward	Move overlapping widget to foreground
Rear	Move overlapping widget to background
Reload	Update widget

News/Entertainment

S! Information Channel/Weather (Japanese).....	8-2
Registering/Canceling.....	8-2
Using S! Information Channel.....	8-2
Using Weather Indicator	8-3
Option Menu Items.....	8-4
S! Quick News (Japanese)	8-4
Registering S! Quick News Items	8-4
Opening New Information	8-5
E-Books (Japanese).....	8-6
Blogging	8-7
Saving Blog Details.....	8-7
Posting to Blogs	8-7
Blogging Functions.....	8-8

S! Information Channel/Weather (Japanese)

Subscribe to content and periodically receive updates. Set Weather Indicator to appear on Standby.

- Transmission fees apply for updates.
- Auto download is not available overseas.

Registering/Canceling

Main Menu ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather**

1 **Register/Cancel** → YES

Handset connects to the Network.
Follow onscreen instructions.

Using S! Information Channel

- Up to seven updates are saved.

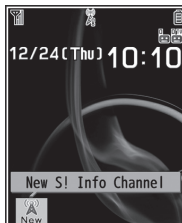
Viewing New Information

When information arrives,  and Event Indicator appear in Standby.

1 In Standby,  →  to move pointer → Select Event Indicator

2  [Select]

Follow onscreen instructions.
• Option Menu Items (P.8-4)



Manually Retrieve Information

Select Event Indicator "Failed to download"

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather** ► **Get Latest Contents** ► YES

Delete Information

> **Main Menu** ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather** ► Highlight **What's New?** ►  [Menu] ► **Delete** ► YES

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather** ► **What's New?** to retrieve information
- If there is unread information in both S! Quick News and S! Information Channel,  does not appear. Only Event Indicator appears.


Viewing Previously Received Information

Main Menu ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather**

1 **History** → Select a date

 for unread news and  for read news appear.

Delete History

> **Main Menu** ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Info Ch./Weather** ► **History** ► (Highlight a History) ►  [Menu] ► **Delete** or **Delete all** ► YES
(► For **Delete all**, enter Phone Password)

Using Weather Indicator


Weather Indicator for current forecast area appears in Standby.

Viewing New Information

Event Indicator and Weather Indicator appear for weather updates.

- 1 In Standby,  →  to move pointer → Select Event Indicator or Weather Indicator



- 2  [Select]
Information appears.
Follow onscreen instructions.
● Option Menu Items (➡P.8-4)

Weather Indicator

Indicators are updated periodically.

Example:  Clear,  Rain later thunderstorm,
 Cloudy with occasional snow, etc.

- See Weather Indicator List (➡P.19-24) for a complete list of indicators.

Manually Update Weather Indicator

Select Event Indicator "*Failed to download*"

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ► News/Entertainment
► S! Info Ch./Weather ► Weather Indicator ► Manual Update
► YES

Hide Event Indicator

- > **Main Menu** ► News/Entertainment ► S! Info Ch./Weather
► Weather Indicator ► Missed Event Settings ► OFF

Note

- Alternatively, view forecast details from **Main Menu**
► News/Entertainment ► S! Info Ch./Weather
► Weather Indicator ► Weather

Hiding Weather Indicator


Main Menu ► News/Entertainment ► S! Info Ch./Weather
► Weather Indicator ► Display Settings

1 OFF

- When Display Settings is set to **OFF**, update is also deactivated.

Option Menu Items

Open information and press  [Menu] for these options.

Item	Operation/Description
Forward	Go to next page
Text Copy	Copy page text
Select File	View, play or save file to Data Folder (From Step 2 in Downloading Image/Sound Files:  P.15-11)
Jump in this page	Jump to top/end of page
Yahoo! Keitai	View top menu
Font Size*	Change character size
Exit viewing this	Exit content

* Linked with Font Size setting in Internet option menu.

S! Quick News (Japanese)

Add news headlines, weather forecasts, etc. via **S! Quick News List** to scroll across **Standby Window**.

- Registering or viewing S! Quick News incurs transmission fees. No fees apply for viewing ticker information. For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- Auto download is not available overseas.

Registering S! Quick News Items

- Register one **Quick** news, up to four **General** news and one **Special** news.

Main Menu ► **News/Entertainment** ► **S! Quick News**
 ► **S! Quick News List**

1 Add News → YES

Yahoo! Keitai connects and contents list appears.




2 Select an item

Follow onscreen instructions.

Opening New Information

Viewing New Information in Standby

When new information is received,  appears in Standby.

- 1 In Standby,  →  to move pointer → Select ticker
- 2  [Select]
Content list appears.
- 3 Select information
Details appear.

Tip

Settings

- Show Only Unread Items in Standby ● Change Marquee Speed
- Hide S! Quick News ● Image Download (P.18-18)

Opening S! Quick News List


Main Menu ► News/Entertainment ► S! Quick News
► S! Quick News List

- 1 Select an item
Content list appears.
- 2 Select information
Detailed information appears.
- 3 To connect to the Network, select a title → **YES**


Update Manually

> In Step 1,  [Menu] → **Update** or **All Update** → **YES**

View Summary

> In Step 1, highlight information →  [Menu] → **Summary Display**

Delete Registered Items

> In Step 1, (highlight information →)  [Menu] → **Delete** or **All Delete** → **YES** (→ For **All Delete**, enter Phone Password)

Note

- Alternatively, Main Menu ► News/Entertainment
► S! Quick News ► Settings ► Del S! Quick News List
► **YES** to delete all information

Tip

Settings

- Automatically Update S! Quick News List
- Delete S! Quick News Information (P.18-19)

E-Books (Japanese)

Use BookSurfing® to acquire/view e-books, comics, photo books, etc. or e-Book Viewer to view XMDF files on handset.

- BookSurfing® and e-Book Viewer are S! Appli.
- Download Content Keys (P.10-5) to read CCF/XMDF files.
- Some copy protected files have extensions different from the ones below.

Application	File Format
BookSurfing®	CCF (.ccf)
e-Book Viewer	XMDF (.zbf, .zbfk, .zbfk)

- Some PC content may not be viewable via e-Book Viewer.

Main Menu ► News/Entertainment

1 BookSurfing or e-Book Viewer

- See application Help menu for usage information.

Note

- Launch BookSurfing®/e-Book Viewer via S! Appli, or select a file from Books in Data Folder.
- When purchasing a new handset, move CCF/XMDF files via microSD Card. However, if CCF/XMDF files are copy protected, Content Keys backup may be needed (P.10-22). Some contents require another Content Key after being moved/copied to a new handset or can not be moved/copied at all.

Blogging

Save blog details to update or view blogs.

- Save up to 20 blog details.

Saving Blog Details

Main Menu ► News/Entertainment ► Post Blog

- 1  [New] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Service name	Save a blog service name ➤ Enter a service name
Blogger address	Save a mail address for posting to a blog by mail ➤ Enter a mail address
Mail title	Save a title to enter automatically when posting to a blog by mail ➤ Enter a title
Yahoo! Keitai URL	Save a URL for posting to a blog from Yahoo! Keitai ➤ Enter a mail address
PC Site Browser	Save a URL for posting to a blog from PC Site Browser ➤ Enter a mail address

- 2  [Finish]


Posting to Blogs

Main Menu ► News/Entertainment ► Post Blog

1 Post by Mail


Highlight an entry →  [Post] → Compose a message ( From Step 4 on P.14-4) →  [Send]


Post from Yahoo! Keitai/PC Site Browser

Highlight an entry →  [To site] →
By Yahoo! Keitai or **By PC Site Browser**
→ **YES**

Handset connects to the Network and website appears.
Follow onscreen instructions.

■ Post Images to Blogs

➤ While captured image is open, or from Data Folder, select an image
→  [Menu] → **Post blog*** → Follow Step 1 above

* When **Post blog** does not appear in sub menu, function is unavailable (e.g. when sub menu is opened from  [Folder] in Picture Viewfinder).

- Set **Auto save set** ( P.18-16) in Camera menu to **OFF** to capture and post images directly.


Blogging Functions


From ► **Main Menu** ► News/Entertainment ► Post Blog

Edit Entries

> Highlight an entry → [Edit] → Edit

Delete Entries

> Highlight an entry → [Menu] → *Delete* →
Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Delete this	> <i>YES</i>
Delete selected	> Check entries →  [Finish] → <i>YES</i>
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → <i>YES</i>

Music Player

Overview	9-2
Saving Music	9-2
Downloading Chaku-Uta Full®	9-3
Saving Music Files by Using SD Audio	9-3
Transferring WMA Files	9-4
Using Music Player	9-5
Playback Window Indicators	9-5
Playing Music	9-6
Playback Window Operations	9-7
Functions while Playing Files	9-8
Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA List	9-9
Using Play List	9-10
Play List	9-11

Overview


Play music saved on handset/microSD Card.

- Play List:  P.9-10

Notes

- Files may not play due to file support issues or microSD Card status, etc.
- When playback starts with low battery, confirmation appears.
When battery is low during playback, confirmation appears.
- Playback pauses for incoming calls or Alarm. Playback resumes after calls are received or Alarm sounds.

Music Illumination




- Notification Light illuminates when playback starts. When playback starts during charging, Music Illumination lights before Charging Indicator.
- To turn off light, set **Music** to **OFF** in Notification Light setting ( P.18-10).

Tip

- Use Bluetooth® Device for Wireless Playback ( P.11-10)

Saving Music


Save Music to play on Music Player.

Download Chaku-Uta Full® ( P.9-3)	Open site link to download and save songs Supported file format: SMC, MPEG-4 (MPEG-4 AAC, MPEG-4 AAC+ (HE-AAC), Enhanced aacPlus)
Save Music via SD Audio ( P.9-3)	Save music CD songs via PC to microSD Card in AAC format Supported file formats: MPEG-2 AAC, MPEG-2 AAC+SBR
Save WMA files ( P.9-4)	Save Windows Media® Audio (WMA) files in PC to microSD Card via Windows Media® Player Supported file formats: WMA

- Some files may not play even if format is supported.

Copy Protected Files

Copy protected files may not play, be saved or forwarded.

To play a copy protected file, obtain Content Key ( P.10-5).

Confirm file expiry date or usage limitations (Music info:  P.9-8).

Saving Music Files on PCs

When saving music files for use with 940P, observe the following guidelines:

- Copyrighted Works
 - Do not infringe on third party/intellectual property rights.
 - Music files are limited to private use.
- Obtain software to convert file format.
 - Refer to websites providing software.
 - Performance of some software types is not guaranteed.

Downloading Chaku-Uta Full®

Access websites directly from Music Player to download Chaku-Uta Full® files.

- View details (price, expiry date, etc.) on source website.

**Main Menu ▶ Music ▶ Data Manager ▶ Main Folder
▶ Download Music**

1 YES

Handset connects to the Network and Download site appears.

- Follow onscreen instructions to download files.

Note

- Alternatively, follow these steps to access Download site:
**Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Music ▶ Main Folder
▶ Download Music ▶ YES**

Saving Music Files by Using SD Audio

Note


- Saving music files requires following:
 - 940P
 - microSD Card (commercial item)
 - USB cable (not included)
 - PC (Windows® XP, Windows Vista®)
 - Software for PC (commercial item)
- Panasonic brand "SD-Jukebox" is recommended. Purchase SD-Jukebox from website below:
<http://club.panasonic.jp/mall/sense/> (Japanese only)
- Music CD to save

**Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity ▶ USB Mode
▶ microSD Mode**

- 1 Connect handset to a PC via USB cable
- 2 Activate SD-Jukebox on PC
- 3 Set a music CD on PC
- 4 Save music files to micro SD Card
 - See SD-Jukebox manual for usage information.
 - After saving, release USB cable from handset.

Transferring WMA Files

Transfer WMA files from PC to microSD Card via Windows Media® Player. Up to 1000 files can be saved per microSD Card.

- Use PC with Windows Media® Player installed.
- When using Windows Media® Player 10 (10.00.00.3802 or later)/11 on Windows® XP, use Windows® XP Service Pack 2 or later.
- When using Windows Vista®, use Windows Media® Player 11.
- Insert microSD Card into handset before preparing USB cable (Transferring Data via USB Cable:  P.11-12)



Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity ► USB Mode
► MTP Mode

1 Connect handset to a PC via USB cable

Follow Windows Media® Player operations to transfer WMA files from PC to microSD Card.

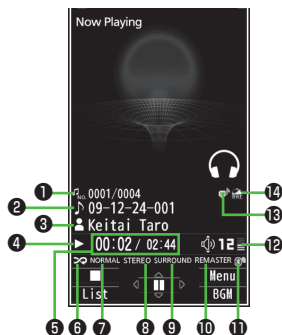
- Refer to Windows Media® Player Help for operations.
- Terminate all software applications before disconnecting USB cable.

Note

- Do not remove microSD Card while transferring files to microSD Card. Files may be damaged.
- WMA files overwrite existing files with same name in handset when copied from PC. To check file names, refer to Windows Media® Player Help.
- 940P may not recognize WMA files saved to a microSD on a different handset. Handset may not recognize WMA files from PCs if **USB Mode** is set to **MTP Mode**. Delete WMAudio and WMSYSTEM folders in My Items (MY FOLDER) on microSD, or format microSD Card ( P.10-18) via PC. Formatting microSD deletes all saved files.
- To play WMA files on handset, save files to WMFile ( P.10-20) on microSD Card and play the files from PC Movies folder in Data Folder.

Using Music Player

Playback Window Indicators



Item	Description
1 File Number/Total Number	—
2 Title	—
3 Artist	—
4 Status	—
5 Elapsed Time/Total Time	—
6 Play Mode Indicators	<div> <div> Play only one Repeat all Random play&repeat DEMO </div> <div> Repeat one Random </div> </div>
7 Equalizer Setting	<div> <div> NORMAL Normal H.BASS2 H.BASS2 </div> <div> H.BASS1 H.BASS1 TRAIN Train </div> </div>
8 Stereo/Monaural	<div> STEREO Stereo MONO Monaural </div>
9 Listening Setting	<div> SURROUND Surround-sound NATUR1 Natur 1 NATUR2 Natur 2 </div>
10 Remaster Setting ON	—
11 Bluetooth® Device Connected	—
12 Volume	—
13 Lyric	—
14 URL	—

Playing Music

Main Menu ► Music

1 Player

Player Menu window appears.

- Last playback window appears.

[Menu] → **Player menu** to show
Player Menu window.



Player Menu Window

2 Select a category (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
All Tracks	Select files from handset & microSD Card
Play List	Select group of files saved to Play List
Artist	Select files from Artist folder
Album	Select files from Album folder
Genre	Select files from Genre folder

- ★ appears for currently/previously played Play List.

3 Select a file

Selected file plays.

- ★ appears for currently/previously played file.
- Playback Window Operations: P.9-7
- To end playback, [Stop]

Note

- mp4/3gp files in Ring Songs&Tones folder can also be played in Music Player.

Changing Play Mode

Main Menu ► Music

1 Player

Player Menu window or Playback window appears.



2 [Menu] → **Play mode setting**

3 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Normal	Play all files in selected category/Play List
Play only one	Play selected file
Repeat one	Repeat selected file
Repeat all	Repeat all files in selected category/Play List
Random	Play selected category/Play List files randomly
Random play&repeat	Repeat selected category/Play List files randomly

Background Music

Listen to music while using other handset functions.

- 1 While music plays,  [BGM]
- 2 To end,  in Standby → **End player**


Note


- Some functions cannot operate simultaneously.
- Volume or play mode change is not available during Play Background.

Playing Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA Files as Demo

Main Menu ► Music ► Data Manager
















- 1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Main Folder	View Chaku-Uta Full® list > Select a folder ● To view file list in handset/microSD Card:  [Phone/microSD]
WMA	View WMA list

-  [Change] to toggle display view in Chaku-Uta Full® and WMA list.

- 2 Select a Chaku-Uta Full® or WMA file
 Demonstration playback starts.


Playback Window Operations

Adjust Volume	 or 
Play Previous*	 or press and hold  ● When playback time is over three seconds, previous file plays from beginning.
Play Next*	 or press and hold 
Rewind	Press and hold 
Forward	Press and hold 
Pause/Resume	 [ / ]
Stop	 []
View Next Jacket/Lyric	(3)
View Previous Jacket/Lyric	(1)
Switch Jacket/Lyric Display	(2)
Switch Playlist/Playback Window*	 [List/Player]
Play Background*	 [BGM]
Switch Remaster (P.9-8)	(9)
Switch Listening (P.9-8)	(8)
Switch Equalizer (P.9-8)	(7)

* Not available for playback as a demo

Functions while Playing Files

■ Set Sound Effect

> While playing file,  [Menu] → **Sound effect** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Remaster	Complement sound from earphone or Bluetooth® device to bring close to original sound > ON or OFF
Listening	Add listening effect to sound from earphone or Bluetooth® device > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Surround-sound: Reproduce natural and stereophonic sound · Natur 1 or Natur 2: Complement sound specific to earphone to reproduce natural sound · OFF: Turn off Listening setting
Equalizer	Change quality of sound from earphone or Bluetooth® device > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Normal: Reproduce normal sound · H. BASS1: Enhance low-pitched sound · H. BASS2: Enhance low-pitched sound even more · Train: Minimize sound leakage

■ Functions Available in Playback Window

> While playing file,  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Player menu	Show Player menu
Play mode setting	Change play mode (⏮P.9-6)
Sound effect	(⏮Left)
Music info	Show song title, artist and playback time
Connect to Website	Open site link > YES
Display Image	Show jacket
Display lyric	Show lyric
Previous image/ Previous lyric	Show previous jacket or lyric
Next image/ Next lyric	Show next jacket or lyric

Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA List

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Music** ► **Data Manager**

■ Confirm Memory Status

> [Menu] → *Memory Status*

■ Functions Available in Chaku-Uta Full® Folder List

> *Main Folder* → Highlight a folder → [Menu] → Select an item
(See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add folder	> Enter folder name
Edit folder name	> Enter folder name
Delete folder	> Enter Phone Password → YES
Memory Status	> Confirm memory status/total files

■ Functions Available in Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA File List

> *Main Folder* or *WMA* (→ Select a folder) → Highlight a file → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Set as ring tone (Fullsong ring tone)¹	Set Chaku-Uta Full® as ringtone > <i>Fullsong ring tone</i> → Select an item
Set as ring tone (Point ring tone)¹	Set a segment of Chaku-Uta Full® as ringtone > <i>Point ring tone</i> → Select a segment → Select an item ● To confirm segment: [Play]
Music info	Show song title, artist and playback time
Move¹	> Select a storage

Item	Operation/Description
Move to microSD¹	Move a Chaku-Uta Full® to microSD Card
Add folder¹	> Enter folder name
Multiple-choice¹	Select multiple Chaku-Uta Full® files > Check Chaku-Uta Full® files → [Menu] → <i>Delete</i> , <i>Move</i> or <i>Send Ir data</i> → Operate selected item
Connect to Website¹	Open site link > YES
Display image	Show jacket
Memory Status	Memory status/total number of files appears
DEL all licenses²	Delete all WMA licenses > Enter Phone Password → YES
Delete this	> YES
Delete all	Delete all files in folder > Enter Phone Password → YES
Attach to S! Mail¹	Send a file via S! Mail (→ From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Send Ir data¹	(→ P.11-3)
IC transmission¹	(→ P.11-5)
Take contents key¹	(→ P.10-5)

¹ Chaku-Uta Full® files only

² WMA files only

Using Play List

Use **Play List** to organize **Data Folder** music files.
Select **Music** folder files to create **Play List** links to each file in its original folder.


Creating New Play Lists

- Save up to 30 Play Lists with up to 100 songs per list.
- Music files saved on microSD Card are also savable.

Main Menu ► Music

1 *Player*

Player Menu window or Playback window appears.

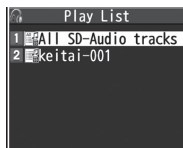
- When Playback window appears,  [Menu] → **Player menu** to show Player Menu window

2 *Play List* → [Menu] →

Create play list → Select a category and show file list → Check files to save to Play List →

 [Finish]

3 Enter a Play List name



Play List Window

Note


- Create WMA Play Lists (using Windows Media® Player) or SD Audio Play Lists (using SD-Juke Box) on PC. Maximum number of Play Lists to create and songs to save is as follows:
WMA Play Lists: 100 Play Lists; 250 songs per list
SD Audio Play Lists: 99 Play Lists; 99 songs per list

Playing Songs from Play List

Main Menu ► Music

1 *Player*

Player Menu window or Playback window appears.

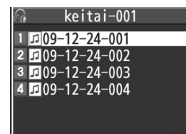
- When Playback window appears,  [Menu] → **Player menu** to show Player Menu window

2 *Play List* → Select a Play List

- To play back selected Play List from the beginning:  [Play]

3 Select a file

Selected file plays back.



Play List Contents Window

Note

- mp4/3gp files in Ring Songs&Tones folder can also be added to Play List.

Play List

Main Menu ► Music ► Player
 (► [Menu] ► Player menu) ► Play List

■ Functions Available in Play List Window

> (Highlight a Play List) [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Player menu	Open Player menu
Play mode setting	Change play mode (P.9-6)
Create play list	Create a new Play List (P.9-10)
Copy play list	Copy Play List > Enter a Play List name
Edit pl. list name	Edit Play List name > Edit Play List name
Add	Add files to Play List > Select a category, and open a Play List → Check files to add → [Finish]
Delete play list	> Select an item → Operate selected item

■ Functions Available in Play List Contents Window

> Select a Play List → (Highlight a file) → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Player menu	Open Player menu
Play mode setting	Change play mode (P.9-6)

Item	Operation/Description
Music info	Show song title, artist and playback time
Add	Add files to Play List > Select a category, and show contents window → Check files to add → [Finish]
DEL from play list	Delete files from Play List > Select an item → Operate selected item
Order to play	> Select a file from Play List to change playing order → to change order → [Select] ● Repeat steps above to change order → [Set]
Add to play list	Add files to another Play List > Add one or Add some (→ For Add some , check files → [Finish]) → Select a Play List
Display image	Show jacket



Managing Files

Data Folder	10-2
Data Folder Structure	10-2
Opening Files	10-4
Viewing & Playing Files	10-4
Copy Protected Files	10-5
File Display/Playback Functions	10-6
Options	10-7
Using/Editing Still Images	10-12
Editing Still Images	10-12
Creating Animations	10-13
Saving Still Images to Phone Book	10-14
Managing Folders/Files	10-14
Managing Folders	10-14
Using Play List	10-15
microSD Card	10-16
microSD Card Installation	10-17
Format microSD Card	10-18
Viewing microSD Card Files	10-18
Handset Data Backup	10-19
PC File Transfers	10-20
microSD Card Functions	10-21

Data Folder

Save, play and manage files downloaded from Internet, etc.

- Save still images/videos captured by Camera, downloaded data or data copied/moved from SoftBank handset to microSD Card.

Data Folder Structure

Folder		Function/Saved Data	File Format ¹
Pictures ²	Download Pictures	Connect to download site	JPEG, GIF (.gif including Interlaced GIF), GIF Pictogram Package File (.gpk), SWF (.swf Flash Animation), PNG (.png including Interlaced PNG)
	Album-Touch	Activate Album-Touch	
	Main Folder	Downloaded still images, etc.	
	Camera	Still images captured by Camera, etc.	
	My Pictograms	Download My Pict.	
		お気に入り	
		顔文字, 装飾, etc.	
	Mail Art	Mail Art (download)	
Ring Songs&Tones ²	Pre-installed	Preinstalled still images	SMF, SP-MIDI, AMR, SMAF and MPEG-4 formatted files (.mid, .midi, .amr, .mmf, .3gp, .mp4)
	Original Animation	Display still images continuously	
	DL Ring Songs&Tones	Connect to download site	
	Main Folder	Downloaded ring songs/tones, etc.	
	Pre-installed	Preinstalled ring songs/tones	
	Voice Announce	Data recorded by Voice Announce	
S! Appli ²	Download S! Appli	Connect to download site	—
	Download Widget	Connect to download site	
Music	Main Folder ²	Download Music	MP4, SMC, WMA (.3gp, .mp4, .smc, .wma)
		Music Search	
		Initial Folder	
	WMA ³	Downloaded Chaku-Uta Full® WMA Files transferred from PC	

Folder		Function/Saved Data	File Format ¹
Videos²	Download Videos	Connect to download site	MP4 (including .mp4, .3gp, SDV), ASF (.asf)
	Main Folder	Downloaded video files, etc.	
	Camera	Video files recorded by Camera	
	Pre-installed	Preinstalled video files	
	Play List	Play back Play List	
	Position Memory	Play back video files from saved resume position	
PC Movies	microSD ³	PC movies saved using PC	WMA (.wma), WMV (.wmv), ASF (.asf)
	Position Memory	Play back PC movies from saved resume position	
	Play History	Playback records of PC movies	
TV	Image	Still images recorded by Digital TV	JPEG (.jpg)
	Video ³	Copy-protected video files (One-Seg compatible)	TOD (.tod), MOI (.moi),
	Position Memory	Play back video files from saved resume position	MAI (.mai), PGI (.pgi)
Lifestyle-Appli	Download	Connect to download site (Osaifu-Keitai®: ☞ P.13-10)	—
Books²	Download Books	Connect to download site	CCF (.ccf), XMDF (.zbf, .zbs, .zbs)
Customized Screen²	Customized Screen	Connect to download site	CUSR (.xcfs)
Templates	Download Templates	Connect to download site	—
Font	Download Font	Connect to download site	MTF (.mtf)
	Main Folder	Downloaded fonts	
	Pre-installed	Pre-installed fonts	
Other Documents²	Main Folder	Incompatible files attached to mail ⁴	—

¹ Some copy protected files have extensions different from above.

² When microSD Card is installed, press  [microSD] in Folder list to view data saved in microSD Card.

³ Available only when microSD Card is installed.

⁴ Some attachment files cannot be saved in Other Documents.

Opening Files

Viewing & Playing Files

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- Select a folder
 - In Folder List, press to toggle handset folder and microSD Card folder.



Pictures Folder

- Select a folder → Select a file
File appears/plays.
 - To toggle file list view: [Change]



Still Image List Window

When Shortcut to a Download Site is Selected

Handset connects to a download site on Internet.

Operations while Playing Back Ring Songs&Tones

Stop	[Stop]
Volume	/
Attach files (during playback) to S! Mail	[]

Videos/PC Movies Playback Operation

- Some operations are not available depending on files.
- Operation descriptions are based on Portrait View.

Adjust Volume	or
Play Previous	 ● Starts from beginning when playback time is over three seconds.
Play Next	
Rewind ¹	Press and hold
Forward ¹	Press and hold
Select Position ²	repeatedly
Change Speed	[/ /]
Mute/Resume	[/]
Pause/Resume	[/]
Play Frame by Frame ¹	While pausing, [Frame] ● Play back frame by frame
Remaster (⏮P.9-8)	[9]
Listening (⏮P.9-8)	[8]
Equalizer (⏮P.9-8)	[7]

¹ Videos only

² PC Movies only









Tip

- File Display/Playback Functions (⏮P.10-6)

Copy Protected Files

Playing/forwarding/saving may be restricted and Content Key may be required for usage.

If Content Key is expired, obtain a new Key to use file.

-  or  (Silver) appears for copy protected files requiring Content Keys.  files are accessible.  files are inaccessible.  appears on images in Thumbnail view of expired files (Original icon appears for Books folder).
- When deleting  files or folders containing  files, confirmation appears asking whether to delete corresponding Content Key. Other files requiring same Content Key may become unusable.
- See File Properties to confirm restrictions such as expiry term or usage limitation (Options:  P.10-7)
- 940P holds up to 1000 Content Keys. Multiple Keys may be required to use a file.
- Interrupted playback (by incoming calls or Alarm) of copy protected WMA files with limited usage in Data Folder is also counted as one usage.


Using Copy Protected Files

- Files downloaded on handset cannot be used on PCs.
- Network setting may be required for usage.
- File usage may require insertion of USIM Card in use at time of download.
- When set as wallpaper or ringtone, settings may return to defaults if license has expired or different USIM Card is inserted.
- Limited use files cannot be set as wallpaper or ringtone.

Obtaining Content Key

If Content Key is expired, a message appears when the file is opened. To obtain a new Key, select **YES**. Handset connects to Content Key site.

Note

- Alternatively, obtain Content Key as follows: Highlight a file →  [Menu] → **Take contents key** → **YES**
- Depending on contents, some Content Keys may not be obtained from websites even when warning for expired contents appears.
- When 1000 Content Keys have been saved, a message appears. Delete old Keys; otherwise downloads may fail (Connection fees apply).

Tip

- Back Up Content Key ( P.10-22)

File Display/Playback Functions

Enlarge Still Images

> **Main Menu** > **Data Folder** > **Pictures** > Select a folder > Select a file > **[Menu]** > **Display size** > **Fit in display**

Play Back from a Resume Position

Resume playback (videos/PC Movies) from a saved position.

> **Main Menu** > **Data Folder** > **Videos** or **PC Movies**

> **Position Memory** > Select an item

- Save a resume position: Right
- **Marker to resume** is a resume position automatically saved when a call comes in, alarm goes off, battery runs low, or playback is terminated.

Functions Available in Video/PC Movie Playback Window

- Some operations are not available depending on files.
- > While playback is paused, **[Menu]** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Normal play ¹	Play at normal speed
Slow ¹	Play at slow speed
Quick View (1.25x) ¹	Play 1.25 times faster than normal
Quick View(2x) ¹	Play at double speed
Fast ²	Forward
Rewind ²	Rewind
Stop	Return to Videos/PC Movies List window
Position to play	Start playback from specified point > to highlight a play point → [Set]
Connect to Website ¹	Open site link > YES

Item	Operation/Description
Sound effect	Remaster, Listening or Equalizer (P.9-8)
Contents info ²	Show title, file name, etc.
Position memory	Save resume position > Select a resume position ● To play back from a saved position: Left
Mail/blog ¹	Send file via S! Mail or post on a blog > Select an item · Attach to S! Mail (From Step 2 on P.14-4) · Post blog (Step 1 on P.8-7)
Register (Ringtones) ¹	Set as ringtone > Ringtones → Select a type ● ★ appears for item set as ringtone.
Register (Stand-by Display/Start-up Window) ¹	Save a file as Standby Display or Start-up Window > Select an item → YES
Video info ¹	Show title, file name, etc.
Send Ir data ¹	Send file via Infrared (P.11-3)
IC transmission ¹	Send file via IC transmission (P.11-5)
Add shortcut icon ¹	Create a shortcut (P.1-23)
Description ²	Show file information > The words view or Description view
Copy URL ²	Copy URL
Display size	Select a display size > Actual size or Fit in display
Change to full ³	Switch to Landscape View. Full screen playback starts. ● To toggle views:

¹ Video files only ² PC movies only

³ Only when Motion Control Setting (P.18-6) is set to **OFF**

Options

Highlight a file in Data Folder → [Menu] for the following operations.

- Some functions may not be available depending on files.

Pictures

Item	Operation/Description
Edit picture	Edit files (P.10-12)
Display picture	Open files
Set display*	Set as wallpaper, Phone Book image, Menu Icons, etc. > Select an item ● ★ appears for item.
Picture info	Show file name, file size, etc.
Attach to S! Mail	Send files via S! Mail (P.From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Graphic mail	Add selected files to Graphic Mail (P.14-9)
Post blog	Post file on a blog (P.8-7)
Send Ir data	Send files via Infrared (P.11-3)
IC transmission	Send files via IC transmission (P.11-5)
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (P.1-23)
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Positioning	Set where to paste files in Standby > Select a position
Edit file name	Edit file names
Move	Move files to other folders

Item	Operation/Description
Slideshow	Show files in a folder continuously. Select display speed > Normal or Slow
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use → [Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order
Pictures/ File names	Toggle list view ● Alternatively, [Change] to toggle
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key

* Before setting a file as Video Call related item (except for Incoming/ Outgoing Video Calls), set **Select Images** to **Original** (Change Outgoing Image: P.18-11).

To set a file as Menu Icon related item, set **Menu Icons** to **Customize** (P.18-4).

- If incoming calls arrive or handset is turned off while My Pictograms package file (.gpk) is being uncompressed, some pictograms in package file may not open. Retry uncompressing.

Tip

- Enlarge Still Images (P.10-6)
- Editing Still Images (P.10-12)
- Creating Animations (P.10-13)
- Saving Still Images to Phone Book (P.10-14)

Ring Songs&Tones

Item	Operation/Description
Edit file name	Edit file names
Play melody	Play back files
Set as ring tone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > Set as ringtone ● ★ appears for item.
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (👉P.1-23)
Attach to S! Mail	Send files via S! Mail (👉From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Send Ir data	Send files via Infrared (👉P.11-3)
IC transmission	Send files via IC transmission (👉P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Song-Tone info	Show titles, file names, etc.
Memory Status	Show memory information
Delete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> > Select a type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Delete this → YES · Delete select → Check files to delete → [Finish] → YES · Delete all → Enter Phone Password → YES
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order
Move	Move files to other folders
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key

Widget

Item	Operation/Description
Paste on Stand-by	(👉P.7-2)
Widget Information	Show file names, sizes, etc.
Attach to S! Mail	Send files via S! Mail (👉From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Send Ir data	Send files via Infrared (👉P.11-3)
IC transmission	Send files via IC transmission (👉P.11-5)
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use → [Menu] → Select an item

S! Appli/Lifestyle-Appli

Item	Operation/Description
Start	Activate S! Appli or Lifestyle-Appli
Security level	Set security level (P.16-4)
S! Appli info	Show file names, file sizes, etc.
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (P.1-23)
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card (Lifestyle-Appli cannot be moved)
Delete	Delete files > YES

Music

- See "Functions Available in Chaku-Uta Full®/WMA File List" (P.8-9)

Videos

Item	Operation/Description
Register	Set as ringtones, Standby Display or Start-up display
Video info	Show titles, file names, etc.
Attach to S! Mail	Send files via S! Mail (From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Post blog	Post file on a blog (P.8-7)
Send Ir data	Send files via Infrared (P.11-3)
IC transmission	Send files via IC transmission (P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Move	Move files to other folders

Item	Operation/Description
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (P.1-23)
Edit file name	Edit file names
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use → [Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order
Listing	Change list view ● [Change] to toggle views
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key

■ PC Movies

Item	Operation/Description
Contents info	Show titles, file names, etc.
Move	Move files to other folders
Copy	Copy files to other folders
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use → [Menu] → Select an item
Comment view	Show descriptions
Memory Status	Show memory information
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES

■ TV



- See Pictures folder for still images.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit title	> Enter titles
Video info	Show titles, channel names, etc.
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (P.1-23)
Delete	> Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Delete this → YES · Delete selected → Check files to delete → [Finish] → YES · Delete all → Enter Phone Password → YES
Memory Status	Show memory information
Listing	Change list view <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● [Change] to toggle views



■ Books

Item	Operation/Description
Play	Play back files
Connect to Website	Open site link
Book info	Show file names, file sizes, etc.
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Add folder	Add folders
Edit file name	Edit file names
Move	Move files to other folders
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key
Delete	Delete files > YES



■ Customized Screen

Item	Operation/Description
Preview	Preview files
Collective Setting	Set Customized Screen all at once
File info	Show titles, file names, etc.
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Move to microSD	Move files to microSD Card
Edit file name	Edit file names
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use →  [Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order
Listing	Change list view ●  [Change] to toggle views
Take contents key	Connect to site for Content Key
Connect to Website	Open site link

■ Templates

Item	Operation/Description
Compose S! Mail	Send files via S! Mail ( P.14-5)
Edit title	Edit titles
Template info	Show title and file size
Delete this	> YES
Delete selected	> Check files to delete →  [Finish] → YES
Delete All	> Enter Phone Password → YES

■ Font

Item	Operation/Description
Set	Apply selected font
File info	Show file names, file sizes, etc.
Edit title	Edit titles
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use →  [Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order
Listing	Change list view ●  [Change] to toggle views

Other Documents

Item	Operation/Description
File info	Show file names, file sizes, etc.
Attach to S! Mail	Send files via S! Mail (📧 From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Copy to microSD	Copy files to microSD Card
Edit file name	Edit file names
Move	Move files to other folders
Delete this	Delete a file > YES
Delete all	Delete all files > Enter Phone Password → YES
Multiple-choice	Select multiple files to use > Check files to use → [Y?][Menu] → Select an item
Memory Status	Show memory information
Sort	Change display order of files > Select an order

Note

- Titles of mp4/3gp Ring Songs&Tones files and Videos/Music/Customized Screen files appear in respective lists. Files without titles appear with file names (created when files are saved to handset). Titles cannot be changed; edited file names may not appear in lists.

Using/Editing Still Images

Editing Still Images

- Edit features are not available for all file types.

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Pictures

- Select a folder → Select a file → [Y?][Menu] → **Edit picture**
- [Y?][Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Marker stamp	> Select a stamp → 🎯 to move stamp → [Put] ● Following options are available when positioning a stamp: · To rotate or scale up/down: [Y?][Menu] → Select an item · To start over: [Cancel] ● To add: [Add]
Frame	> Select a frame · To rotate 180 degrees: [Y?][Menu] → 180° rotation · To change frame: 🎯 · To return to frame list: [Cancel]
Character stamp	> Enter text → 🎯 to move text → [Put] ● To change content/color/font/size: When positioning stamp, [Y?][Menu] → Operate selected item ● To start over: [Cancel] after positioning

Item	Operation/Description
Fit in screen	Change image size to Standby (480 x 854) > YES
Change size	> Select a size ● To start over: [Cancel]
Trim away	> Specify a size → to specify area → [Set] ● To start over: After specifying area, [Cancel]
Retouch	> Select an item ● To start over: [Cancel]
Rotate	> 90° to right, 90° to left or 180° ● To start over: [Cancel]
Brightness	> to adjust brightness
Attach to S! Mail^{1 2}	Create S! Mail with edited still images > [Set] → Create S! Mail (👉 From Step 2 on P.14-4) ● Alternatively, [] to attach pictures to S! Mail
Post blog^{1 2}	Post on a blog > [Set] → Post on a blog (👉 P.8-7)
Save¹	Overwrite/rename to save edited files

¹ Available after other editing operations.

² File is automatically saved.

3 [Set] → [Save]

4 **YES** (Overwrite) or **NO** (Save as)

Creating Animations

Saving Original Animation

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Pictures ▶ Original Animation

1 <New> → <1st> - <20th>

2 Select a folder → Select a file
● Repeat Step 2.

3 [Finish]

Functions Available in Original Animation List

In Original Animation list, press [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit title	> Enter title
Org. animation	Add more files to an Original Animation (👉 Above)
Display picture	Play back an Original Animation ● Alternatively, select an Original Animation from list to play back.
Set display	Set an Original Animation as Standby display, etc. > Select item to set Original Animation as
Picture info	View item set for Set display
Release animation	Cancel a saved Original Animation > YES

Saving Still Images to Phone Book

- Savable sizes:
 - Standby (480 x 854) or smaller in JPEG or GIF format (up to 300 Kbytes)
 - VGA (640 x 480) or smaller in PNG format
- Save images to up to 100 Phone Book entries.
- Still images cannot be saved to USIM Card Phone Book entries.

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Pictures

- 1 Select a folder → Select a file → [Menu] → **Set display** → **Phone Book**
- 2 **New Entry**
New → Enter details (→ From Step 3 on P.4-3) → [Finish]
Add to Existing Entry
Add → Select entry → [Finish] → **YES**

Managing Folders/Files

Managing Folders

The following operations are available in Pictures, Music, Books, Videos, Ring Songs&Tones and Other Documents.

Main Menu ► Data Folder

- 1 Select a folder → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add folder	Create user folders
Edit folder name	Edit user folder names
Delete folder	Delete a user folder > Enter Phone Password → YES → YES
Folder security¹	Hide files in folder unless Phone Password is entered > Enter Phone Password → YES appears for folder. ● To cancel: Repeat the step
Delete all image²	> Enter Phone Password → YES → YES
Edit Play List³	Edit Play Lists
Release Play List³	Cancel edited Play Lists > YES

Item	Operation/Description
Select storage ⁴	Specify folders on microSD Card to save files to > YES <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Folders cannot be specified when saving Books files.
Memory Status ⁵	View memory capacity/number of saved files

¹ Pictures/Videos folders only

² Pictures folder only

³ Play List folder in Ring Songs&Tones folder only

⁴ microSD Card only

⁵ Music folder only

Using Play List

Use Play List to organize Data Folder Ring Songs&Tones/Videos files.

Select Ring Songs&Tones, Music or Videos folder files to create Play List links to each file in its original folder.

Creating Ring Songs&Tones Play Lists

Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Ring Songs&Tones

1 Highlight **Play List** → [Menu] → **Edit Play List**

2 Select a number → Select a folder → Select a file
 ● Repeat Step 2.

3 [Finish]

■ Play Back Play List


> Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Ring Songs&Tones ► Play List

● Files are played back in the saved order.

■ Delete a File

> After Step 1, select a file → Release this

■ Delete All Files

> In Step 1, [Menu] → Release Play List → YES

Note

● mp4/3gp files cannot be added to Play List except in Music Player Play List.

Creating Video Play Lists

Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Videos ▶ Play List


- 1 Select a Play List
- 2 Select a number → Select a folder → Select a file
 - Repeat Step 2.

3  [Finish]




■ Play Back Play Lists

- > **Main Menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Videos ▶ Play List ▶** Highlight a Play List →  [Play]
- Files are played back in the saved order.

■ Delete a File

- > After Step 1, (highlight a file →)  [Menu] → **Delete this** or **DEL all from list** → **YES**

■ Change Order

- > After Step 1,  [Menu] → **Order to play** → Select a file → Select a target →  [Finish] →  [Finish]


microSD Card

- 940P is compatible with up to 2 GB commercial microSD Cards and up to 16 GB commercial microSDHC Cards (as of October 2009). For information on memory card compatibility, visit the website below (Japanese). Note that microSD Cards not listed on the website may not function properly.
 - From Yahoo! Keitai
P-egg (as of October 2009)
Main Menu ▶ Yahoo! ▶ Bookmarks
▶ Panasonic Site (P-egg)
 - From PC
<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/>
Not all operations are guaranteed by the microSD/microSDHC Cards listed.
- Format new microSD/microSDHC Cards for use with handset (👉P.10-18).

Note

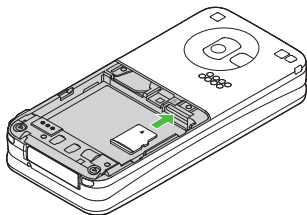
- SoftBank is not liable for damages from accidental loss/alteration of microSD Card information. Keep a copy of Phone Book entries, etc. in a separate place.
- microSD Card has no write protect feature; there is a risk of accidental erasure/overwriting of files.

microSD Card Installation







- Turn off handset before inserting/removing microSD Card.
- Battery Installation:  P.1-13

Inserting

- 1 Insert microSD Card until it clicks

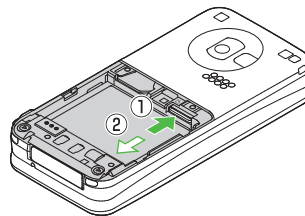


microSD Card Check


When microSD Card is installed correctly,  appears. If  appears, microSD Card cannot be used. Remove microSD Card from handset, and re-insert it. If  does not disappear, execute Check microSD ( P.10-21) or format microSD Card ( P.10-18).
(Display Indicator:  P.1-8)

Removing

- 1 Push microSD Card in
 - microSD Card pops out with a light push.




Note

- Do not turn off handset or remove battery/microSD Card while  flashes. microSD Card may be damaged or files lost.
- microSD Card may pop out when inserting/removing it.

Format microSD Card

- Formatting microSD Card deletes all saved files/data.

Main Menu ► Tools ► microSD Backup

1  [Menu] → *microSD format*

2 Enter Phone Password → **YES**

Note

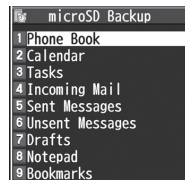
- Do not turn handset power off or remove microSD Card or battery while formatting; may damage handset or microSD Card.
- microSD Cards formatted on other devices may not be used. Format microSD Card on 940P before use.
- Handset cannot format incompatible microSD Cards.
- If format fails, turn power off and remove microSD Card from handset. Reinsert microSD Card and format it again.

Viewing microSD Card Files

View Phone Book entries, Calendar events, Tasks, mail messages, Notepads and Bookmarks backed up on microSD Card.

Main Menu ► Tools ► microSD Backup

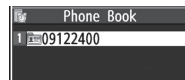
1 Select a category



Category List

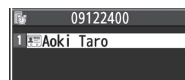
2 Select a file

Backup date appears as file name.



File List

3 Select a data



Data List



Detailed Data

Note

- If messages on microSD Card do not appear correctly, copy messages to handset (P.10-19) and execute **Charset Conversion** (P.14-22).

Handset Data Backup

Back up handset data (Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, Messages, Notepad, Bookmarks, Content Keys) to microSD Card; restore handset data after accidental loss/alteration.

- Back up Content Key: ☞ P.10-22

Backing up to microSD Card

Main Menu ► Tools ► microSD Backup

- 1 Highlight a category → [Y?][Menu] → **Copy to microSD** (→ For **Bookmarks**, select an item)
- 2 Enter Phone Password → **YES**
All files of selected category are backed up to microSD Card.

One File Backup

➢ Open a file → [Y?][Menu] → **Copy to microSD** → **YES**

Restoring from microSD Card

Main Menu ► Tools ► microSD Backup

- 1 Select a category

2 Restore One Item

Select a file → Highlight an item → [Y?][Menu] → **Add to phone**

Restore One File

Highlight a file → [Y?][Menu] → **Add to phone** or **Overwrite to phone** → Enter Phone Password

Restore All Files

[Y?][Menu] → **Add all to phone** or **Overwr. all to ph.** → Enter Phone Password

3 YES

Note

- Note that **Overwrite to phone** or **Overwr. all to ph.** erases all files of same category on handset.
- Files of 10 MB or larger cannot be moved/copied from microSD Card to handset.
- Data backed up in other SoftBank handsets may not be restored in 940P depending on type and size.

Tip

● Delete Items from microSD Card ● View microSD Card Memory Capacity (☞ P.10-21)

PC File Transfers

Folder Structure

Files moved or copied from handset to microSD Card are organized as follows:

- Save files in folders by file type.

DCIM		
● Still images saved to microSD Card		
PRIVATE		
MYFOLDER		
Utility		
Calendar	Calendar.BCK	Calendar Backup files
Contacts	Contacts.BCK	Phone Book Backup files
Rights		Content Key Backup files
Tasks	Tasks.BCK	Tasks Backup files
Memo	Memo.BCK	Notepad Backup files
Mail		
Drafts	Drafts.BCK	Drafts Backup files
Inbox	Inbox.BCK	Incoming Mail Backup files
Outbox	Outbox.BCK	Unsent Messages Backup files
Sent Messages	Sent Messages.BCK	Sent Messages Backup files
My Items		
Book		E-comics
Bookmarks	Bookmarks.BCK	Bookmarks Backup files
Flash(R)		Flash® files

Games and More	S! Appli
Music	Sound files with .3gp, .mp4, .smc
Other Documents	Other files
Pictograms	My Pictograms
Pictures	Still images moved/copied from handset to Main Folder in microSD Card
Sounds & Ringtones	Sound files of: up to 10 MB with .3gp, .mp4, up to 300 KB with .mid, .midi, .amr
Videos	Videos moved/copied from handset to Main Folder in microSD Card
Widget	Widget contents
WMFile*	PC Movies saved from PC to microSD Card
SD_VIDEO	
● Videos saved to microSD Card	

- Some copy protected files have extensions different from above.
- When moving/copying videos from microSD Card to handset, file format or file size may change.

* If WMFile does not appear in My Items (MYFOLDER), create and save a folder titled WMFile.

Using Data on microSD Card


With a microSD Card inserted, connect handset with a PC via USB cable (not included) to read/write data from/onto microSD Card.

Following equipment is required:

- Connector Cable: USB cable
- PC: PC with USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev 1.1/2.0 compliant)
- Compatible Operating Systems: Windows® XP, Windows Vista® (Japanese version in each)

**Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity ▶ USB Mode
▶ microSD Mode**

1 Connect handset to PC via USB cable while handset is on

- PC recognizes microSD Card.
-  appears in Standby (handset).

Note

- Even if incoming call arrives, reading/writing data continues during calls. After calls, check indicators on PC to see if reading/writing is complete.
- File names saved in microSD Card may not properly appear if changed on PC.

microSD Card Functions


■ Restore microSD Card items (Check microSD)

Use Check microSD to repair microSD Card data errors.

> **Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ microSD Backup ▶**  **[Menu]**
▶ **Check microSD ▶ YES**

- Do not turn handset power off or remove microSD Card or battery while formatting; may damage handset or microSD Card.
- It may take 30 seconds or longer to complete Check microSD depending on data volume on microSD Card.
- Handset cannot check incompatible or unformatted microSD Cards.
- Handset may delete files and folders that fail to be restored.

■ Delete Items from microSD Card

> **Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ microSD Backup ▶** Select a category
▶ (Highlight a file →)  **[Menu]** ▶ **Delete this** or **Delete all** (▶ For **Delete all**, enter Phone Password) ▶ **YES**

- Content Key cannot be deleted.

■ View microSD Card Memory Capacity

> **Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ microSD Backup ▶**  **[Menu]**
▶ **microSD info**

■ Back Up Content Key

Copy Content Keys to microSD Card from handset or to handset from microSD Card.

> **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Security** ► **Content Key**

► **Copy to microSD** or **Copy from microSD** ► Enter Phone

Password

- Content Keys with expiration dates or usage limits cannot be backed up.
- USIM Card inserted when Content Keys were moved to microSD Card must be inserted to move Content Keys from microSD Card.
- Some applications are not compatible with handset. Only Content Keys for compatible applications are backed up. Also, note that some keys are moved to microSD Card when backed up. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information for more information (☎P.19-34).
- Backing up Content Keys overwrites previously saved Content Key backup.

Connectivity

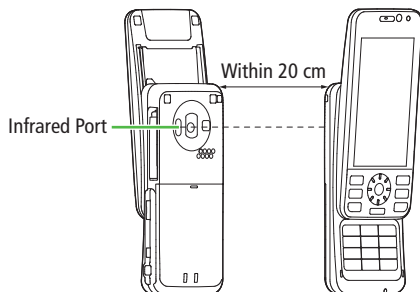
Infrared.....	11-2
Before Using Infrared.....	11-2
One/Multiple File Transfer	11-3
All File Transfers.....	11-3
IC Transmission	11-4
One File Transfer	11-5
All File Transfers.....	11-5
Bluetooth®	11-6
Before Using Bluetooth®	11-6
Using Bluetooth®	11-7
Suspending Bluetooth® Functions	11-8
Placing Bluetooth® Devices on Standby for Connection	11-9
Sending/Receiving Phone Book	11-9
Bluetooth® Functions.....	11-10
SoftBank Utility Software (Japanese).....	11-11
USB (Japanese)	11-11
Setting USB Mode	11-11
Transferring Data via USB Cable.....	11-11
Data Communication via USB Cable.....	11-12
AV Output.....	11-13
Connecting Handset to TV	11-13

Infrared

Before Using Infrared

Transfer Phone Book/Calendar events, messages, bookmarks and Data Folder files wirelessly between handset and compatible devices, including PCs and other mobiles.

- 940P infrared function is based on IrMC1.1, however, some IrMC1.1-based device transmissions may not be transmitted/received within specification.
- Debris may inhibit infrared transfers; clean infrared ports with a soft cloth beforehand.
- Direct sunlight/fluorescent light may inhibit transfers.
- Align infrared ports within 20 cm of one another and make sure no objects are placed between them. Do not move the devices until transfer is complete.



Transferable Files

Transferable file	Condition	One file	All files
Phone Book (Account Details)		○	Up to 1000
Calendar events ¹		○	Up to 1000
Tasks		○	Up to 100
Received message		○	Up to 3000
Sent message		○	Up to 1000
Drafts		○	Up to 10
Notepad		○	Up to 20
Ring Songs&Tones		○	—
Still image ^{2 3}		○	—
Video ³		○	—
Bookmark (Yahoo! Keitai, PC Site Browser)		○	Up to 100 each
Widget ³		○	—

○: Transferable —: Not transferable

¹ Saved Holidays/Memorial days not transferable

² Including Flash® files

³ Multiple files transferable

Note

- Following files cannot transfer:
 - Files prohibited for transfers from 940P
 - Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card
- If memory becomes full, remaining entries are truncated (Memory List: P.19-25).

One/Multiple File Transfer

- Transferable Files: P.11-2

Sending

- Highlight a file, and follow the steps below

Files to Send	Operation/Description
Phone Book	> [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send phonebook</i>
Account Details	> [Ir]
Messages	> [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send This</i>
Bookmarks	> [Menu] → <i>Send to ExtnlDvcs</i> → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send This</i>
Still Images/ Videos/ Widgets	> [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> <ul style="list-style-type: none">To send multiple files: [Menu] → <i>Multiple-choice</i> → Select files to send → [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i>
Other Files	> [Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i>

2 YES

Receiving

Main Menu ► Tools ► Receive via Infrared ► Receive

- When a file is received, **YES**
Send files from sender side within 30 seconds.
 - To receive subsequent files, select **YES**.

All File Transfers

Precaution

- Receiving all files overwrites all saved files including secret/protected files.
- Sending all Phone Book entries transfers Account Details as well. User-saved Account Details is overwritten on receiving handset (handset number remains).

Session Number

Session number (4 digits) is required for all file transfers via Infrared and IC transmission. Sender and recipient must enter same Session number to complete transfers.

Sending

- Highlight a file, and follow the steps below

Files to Send	Operation/Description
Phone Book	[Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send all phonebook</i>
Messages	[Menu] → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send All</i>
Bookmarks	[Menu] → <i>Send to ExtnlDvcs</i> → <i>Send Ir data</i> → <i>Send All</i>
Other Files	[Menu] → <i>Send all Ir data</i>

- Enter Phone Password → Enter Session number → **YES**
Recipient must enter the same Session number to start transfers.


Receiving

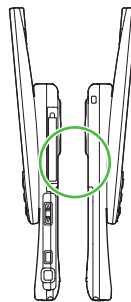
Main Menu ► Tools ► Receive via Infrared ► Receive All


- 1 Enter Phone Password → Enter same Session number as sender's → **YES** → **YES**
Saved files are deleted, and transfer starts.

IC Transmission

Exchange files with another IC compatible handset using reader/writer function.

- Type of files and transfer conditions are same as those for infrared file transfer (☞P.11-2).
Multiple file transfer is not available.
- IC transmission is not available when **IC Card Lock** (☞P.13-12) is activated.
- When receiving data, end all active functions.
- If there is difficulty in file transfer, move a  logo close to or away from the other logo or move each side up, down, left, or right.
- Data cannot be sent during charging battery.



Align  logos of both handsets

One File Transfer

Before Receiving a File

- **Receive IC Datum** is set to **ON** by default. When **Receive IC Datum** is **OFF**, One File Transfer is unavailable.
- To set **Receive IC Datum** on:
Main Menu ► Tools or S! Appli ► Osaifu-Keitai
► IC Card Settings ► Receive IC Datum ► ON or OFF


Sending

- 1 Highlight a file, and follow the steps below

Files to Send	Operation/Description
Phone Book	> [Menu] → IC transmission → Send phonebook
Account Details	> [ICtrans]
Messages	> [Menu] → IC Transmission → Send This
Bookmarks	> [Menu] → Send to ExtnlDvcs → IC transmission → Send This
Other Files	> [Menu] → IC transmission

2 YES

Receiving

- 1 Align  logo on sender side with 940P (recipient) → YES

All File Transfers

- Precautions/Session number (P.11-3)


Sending

- 1 Highlight a file, and follow the steps below

Files to Send	Operation/Description
Phone Book	> [Menu] → IC transmission → Send all phonebook
Messages	> [Menu] → IC Transmission → Send All
Bookmarks	> [Menu] → Send to ExtnlDvcs → IC transmission → Send All
Other Files	> [Menu] → All IC transmission

- 2 Enter Phone Password → Enter Session number → YES
Recipient must enter the same Session number to start transfers.

Receiving

- 1 Align  logo on sender side with 940P (recipient)
- 2 YES → Enter Phone Password → Enter same Session number as sender's
Saved files are deleted. Transfer starts.

Bluetooth®

Connect handset to Bluetooth® devices to use functions below.

Function	Device	Description
Handsfree Calls (☞P.11-10)	Headsets Handsfree devices	Talk handsfree on handset
Wireless Playback (☞P.11-10)	Audio devices	Play back sounds (Digital TV/ Video) or music (Music Player) wirelessly from external speaker
Internet Connection (☞P.11-10)	PC	Connect wirelessly to Internet using handset as external modem
Sending/Receiving Phone Book (☞P.11-9)	PC Handsets	Send/receive Phone Book entries wirelessly

Tip

Settings

- Stop Ringtone Output to Headset/Handsfree Device
- Continue Calls on Handset when Bluetooth® is Disconnected from Headset/Handsfree Device
- Always Make Calls from Handset even when Headset is Connected
- Always Use Handsfree Device to Make/Receive Calls (☞P.18-19)

Before Using Bluetooth®

Bluetooth® Specifications

Version	Bluetooth® specification Ver.2.0+EDR
Supported Profiles¹	HSP: Headset Profile HFP: Hands-Free Profile A2DP: Advanced Audio Distribution Profile AVRCP: Audio Video Remote Control Profile DUNP: Dial-up Networking Profile OPP: Object Push Profile
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class2
Frequency Bands²	2.4GHz (2.402GHz-2.480GHz)
Communication Distance³	Approximately ten meters

¹ Bluetooth® connections are available with compatible devices supporting the same profile.

² Bluetooth® operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending on other devices in use in the spectrum, Bluetooth® connection may slow down/terminate, or range may decrease.

³ Affected by distance between devices, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.

Notes

- Bluetooth® connection is not guaranteed with all Bluetooth® devices.
- Establish connections with certified Bluetooth® devices that meet the specification standards developed by Bluetooth® SIG.
- Due to the unique characteristics/specifications of a certified Bluetooth® device, connections or transfers may fail; procedures, displayed results or operations may vary from those described in the manual.
- When data transfer is interrupted, it may take some time for process to complete.
- Noise may interfere with wireless or handsfree conversations depending on the status of connected devices or signal conditions.
- For details about headset/handsfree devices, see the device manuals.

Using Bluetooth®

Pair Bluetooth® devices with handset beforehand to establish connections for different Bluetooth® functions.

Searching & Pairing Devices

Search other Bluetooth® devices.

Paired devices appear in Search&Paired Device list.

- Bluetooth® Passkey is not necessary for paired devices.
- Search up to 20 Bluetooth® devices at one time; pair with up to ten Bluetooth® devices.
- Place Bluetooth® devices on standby for connection.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bluetooth ► Search&Paired Device

1 **YES***

Device search starts and names of found devices appear.



- To search again:  [Search]



* If there are already paired devices in list, select a device → Select a function

2 Select a device → **YES** → Enter Phone Password

3 Select text entry field → Enter Bluetooth® Passkey

4 Select a Bluetooth® function

Handset connects to Bluetooth® device. When complete,  flashes in blue. After no Bluetooth® connection is made for a certain time,  appears in black and Power saver mode starts.

- When Bluetooth® device can connect to multiple services, confirmation appears asking whether to connect to another service.
- While connected,  (Blue) appears. While in Standby,  (Gray) appears.
- When **Dial-up** is selected, handset stands by for connection requests from other Bluetooth® devices.
- **Dial-up** can be selected regardless of profile types.

Bluetooth® Passkey

Bluetooth® Passkey (1 to 16 digits) is required to connect Bluetooth® devices; sender and recipient must input the same code to complete file transfers.

- Bluetooth® Passkey is not necessary for paired devices.

Search&Paired Device List

1 Device Type

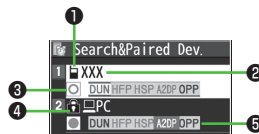
Indicators appear for different types of devices.

2 Device Name

Device names appear.
When no names are found, Bluetooth® addresses appear.

3 Connection Status

: Connected : Not connected : Not found : Not paired



Search&Paired Device

4 Protection

Indicator appears when registered contents are protected.

5 Profile Status

Indicators appear to show profile status.

Icon	Letter Color	Background Color	Frame Color	Status
	Blue	Gray	—	Not connected (Not paired)
	Blue	Gray	Blue	Not connected (Paired)
	White	Green	—	Connected
	Green	White	Green	Standby for connection
	White	Light green	—	Preferred device
	Gray	Gray	—	Not supported

Tip

Settings ● Set Duration to Search for Bluetooth® Devices (P.18-19)

Suspending Bluetooth® Functions

Suspend all Bluetooth® functions connected or on standby for connection, and disable Bluetooth®.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bluetooth

1 Bluetooth OFF → YES

- To return to standby for previously connected function:
Bluetooth ON

Placing Bluetooth® Devices on Standby for Connection

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bluetooth ► Accept Registered

- 1 Check functions to be on standby for connection →
☑[Finish]
 - To uncheck, select functions to remove check marks.

Sending/Receiving Phone Book

Sending

- 1 Open Phone Book → ☑[Menu] →
Send to Bluetooth
- 2 **One File Transfer**
Send phonebook → Select a recipient device
All File Transfer
Send all phonebook → Select a recipient device →
Enter Phone Password
- 3 **YES**

Receiving

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bluetooth ► Receive via Bluetooth

- 1 **One File Transfer**
Receive → **YES**
All File Transfer
Receive All → Enter Phone Password → **YES** → **YES**
 - If memory becomes full, remaining entries are truncated (Memory List: ☞P.19-25).

Tip

Settings

- Set Authentication/Encryption to Send Phone Book Entries
- Enter Password when Sending All Phone Book Entries
(☞P.18-19)

Bluetooth® Functions

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Tools** ► **Bluetooth**

■ Functions Available in Search&Paired Device Window

> **Search&Paired Device** →  **[Menu]** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Register devices	> Enter Phone Password → Pair devices (☞ From Step 3 on P.11-7)
Preferred device	Set a preferred Bluetooth® device for incoming calls <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Available only for headset function compatible Bluetooth® devices. ● To cancel, perform same operation.
Protect/release	Protect/cancel devices. Protection prevents devices from being deleted or overwritten
Change device name	> Enter a device name
Delete	> YES
Description	Show device name, Bluetooth® address, device class and supported profile
Add shortcut icon	Create shortcuts (☞ P.1-23)

■ Make/Receive Calls via Bluetooth®

> **Search&Paired Device** → Select a device → **Headset** or **Hands-free**
→ **YES** → Make/receive a call using Bluetooth® device

■ Use Bluetooth® Device for Wireless Playback

> **Search&Paired Device** → Select a device → **Audio** → Watch Digital TV or play back videos or music

- Digital TV/Video sounds are played only by A2DP profile compatible Bluetooth® devices compliant with SCMS-T copyright protection standard.

■ Connect to Internet Using Bluetooth® Device

> **Search&Paired Device** → Select a device → **Dial-up**

- Handset waits for dial-up connection.
- Refer to a manual for Bluetooth® device for details.
Download utility software (940P) "Modem Wizard" from website below to PC and install software.
<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/support/download/940p/index.html>
- To establish a dial-up connection, see Help on "Modem Wizard."
- Connecting handset to a PC or PDA for Internet access may incur high packet transmission charges.

■ Place Bluetooth® Device on Standby for Dial-up

> **Dialup Rgstry Standby** → Enter Phone Password → **YES** → Select Bluetooth® Passkey text box → Enter Bluetooth® Passkey

SoftBank Utility Software (Japanese)

Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks, messages, Bookmarks, Notepads and Data Folder can be transferred to a PC, edited or managed by using SoftBank Utility Software.

- For details on and downloading SoftBank Utility Software, visit <http://www.softbank.jp/mb/r/sbu/> (Japanese)

Note

- USB cable (not included) is necessary for using SoftBank Utility Software.
- S! Appli, PC Movies, TV, Lifestyle-Appli, Books, Customized Screen, Templates and Other Documents cannot be backed up.
- Copy protected files may not be backed up.
- Set **USB Mode** to **Communication Mode** (☞Right).

USB (Japanese)

Connect handset to a PC via USB cable (not included) specified by SoftBank for data transfer or data communication.

Setting USB Mode

<Default> Communication Mode

Main Menu ► Settings ► Connectivity ► USB Mode

- 1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Communication Mode	Packet transmission, 64K data transmission, data transfer and calls with USB handsfree compatible devices are available (☞Left)
microSD Mode	Read/write data on microSD Card (☞P.10-21)
MTP Mode	Transfer/delete music data via Windows Media® Player on PC (☞P.9-4)

Transferring Data via USB Cable

- Transfer data using SoftBank Utility Software (☞Left).
- Transferring data in microSD Mode (☞P.10-21)

Data Communication via USB Cable

Use handset as a modem for Internet access by connecting handset with a PC.

- Download utility software from URL below and install on PC.
<http://panasonic.jp/mobile/support/download/940p/index.html>

- 1 Install "USBドライバ (USB Driver)" and "Modem Wizard" from Utility Software (940P) to a PC
- 2 Set handset to **Communication Mode** (☞P.11-11), and connect handset to PC via USB cable
 - Power up handset before connecting to PC via USB cable.
- 3 Start up "Modem Wizard", and operate communication setup
 - "Modem Wizard" enables you to set up APN and dial-up easily.
For setup/starting procedures, see "Modem Wizard" Help.

Note

- Connecting handset to a PC or PDA for Internet access may incur high packet transmission fees.

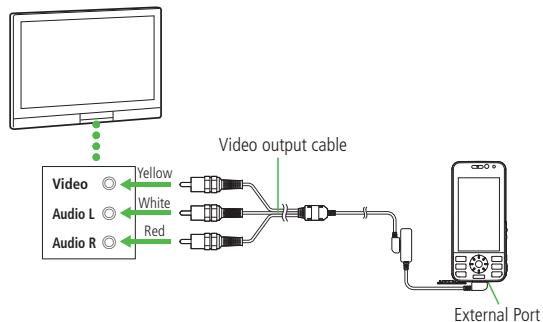
AV Output

View the following on a TV set or other devices using a SoftBank-specified video output cable (not included): Video Call images, Digital TV images, still images/videos saved on 940P.

- View AV-output-compatible S! Appli on TV.

Connecting Handset to TV

- To use video output cable (not included), Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (not included) is required.



- 1 Open External Port Cover
- 2 Connect video output cable to handset using conversion cable
 - To connect video output cable to conversion cable: P.1-4

- 3 Connect video output cable to video/audio input terminal on TV set
- 4 Open an image file on handset
 - To toggle display size:

Note

- Some images cannot be displayed on TV.
- Display size setting is not available for some TV sets.

Handset Security

Changing Phone Password	12-2
Security Functions	12-2
USIM PINs	12-2
Keyguard	12-4
Privacy Key Lock	12-5
Personal Data Lock	12-5
Activating Lock when Closing Handset	12-7
Secure Remote Lock	12-8
Key Pad Dial Lock	12-9
Additional Lock Functions	12-9
Restricting Calls/Messages	12-10
Hiding Call Logs and Sent/Received Address List	12-10
Secret Mode/Secret Data Only	12-10
Setting Secret Mail	12-11
Mail Security	12-12
Call Restrictions	12-12
Delaying Ringtone	12-13
Rejecting Unknown Callers	12-13
Rejecting Calls without Caller ID	12-13
Reset	12-14
Reset Settings	12-14
All Reset	12-14

Changing Phone Password

<Default> 9999

Change Phone Password as required.

- For Phone Password details: 📖P.1-28

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Change Phone Password

- 1 Enter current 4-8-digit Phone Password
- 2 Enter new 4-8-digit Phone Password → **YES**

Security Functions

USIM PINs

- For more information about PINs: 📖P.1-3

Note

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are not dialable in PIN/PIN2, PUK/PUK2 entry window.

PIN Authentication

Activate to require PIN entry each time handset is turned on.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► PIN Authentication

- 1 Enter Phone Password → **PIN Authentication**
- 2 **ON** or **OFF**
- 3 Enter PIN

Changing PIN/PIN2

- Set **PIN Authentication** to **ON** before changing PIN (☞P.12-2).

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► PIN Authentication

- 1 Enter Phone Password → **Change PIN** or **Change PIN2**
- 2 Enter current PIN/PIN2
- 3 Enter new PIN/PIN2
- 4 Reenter new PIN/PIN2

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK/PUK2)

PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock is activated if PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times. Cancel PIN Lock or PIN2 Lock by entering PIN Unlocking Key (PUK/PUK2).

- For information about PUK/PUK2, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞P.19-34).




- 1 In PIN lock mode, enter PUK/PUK2
- 2 Enter new PIN/PIN2
- 3 Reenter new PIN/PIN2

Note

- If PUK/PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten times, USIM Card is locked and handset is disabled (turning off power counts as one incorrect entry). Write down PUK/PUK2.
- For procedures required to unlock USIM Card, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (☞P.19-34).

Keyguard


Lock handset keys to prevent accidental operation except when answering incoming calls.

- While set,  appears in Standby.
- By default, Keyguard temporarily cancels when handset opens (Keyguard Setting: Right).
- Activate Keyguard when specified time elapses after closing handset (Timer Lock at Close: P.12-7)

1 In Standby, press and hold 

- To toggle Keyguard settings, repeat operation.

While Keyguard is Active

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable even when Keyguard is set to **Lock Even Slide Open**. Entered numbers do not appear on Display. Once numbers are dialed, Keyguard is canceled.
- Press  to disable Calendar event tone or Alarm.
- Keyguard can be canceled even during a call.

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Security** ► **Keyguard** ► **ON** or **OFF** to activate/deactivate Keyguard
- Turning off power does not cancel Keyguard.

Keyguard Setting

<Default> Unlock When Slide Open

Set whether to cancel Keyguard temporarily when opening handset.

Main Menu ► **Settings** ► **Security** ► **Keyguard Setting**

1 **Lock Even Slide Open** or
Unlock When Slide Open

Privacy Key Lock

<Default> OFF

Set Privacy Key Lock to require Phone Password for using handset except for turning handset on/off and answering calls.

- While locked,  appears in Standby.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Privacy Key Lock

1 Enter Phone Password

- To cancel Privacy Key Lock, enter Phone Password in Standby. If Phone Password is incorrectly entered five times, handset turns off.

While Privacy Key Lock is Active

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable even when Privacy Key Lock is active.
- Only phone numbers appear on Display for incoming calls.
- Calls cannot be received by Bluetooth® headsets or handsfree devices.
- Message ringtones or Alarm tones are disabled.
- Calendar event tone or Alarm is disabled.
- S! Quick News and some indicators do not appear. They appear after Privacy Key Lock is canceled.

Note

- Turning off power does not cancel Privacy Key Lock.

Personal Data Lock

Set Personal Data Lock to prevent others from reading or tampering with your personal information in Phone Book or Data Folder. Activate to require Phone Password for accessing personal data.

■ Locked Functions/Data

- Messaging
- S! Appli
- Phone Book search/saving/setting
- Memory Manager/ Memory Status (Phone Book)
- Account Details
- Notepad
- Calendar
- Tasks
- Shortcuts
- Event Indicators
- Camera/Video Camera
- Album-Touch
- Lifestyle Appli
- microSD Backup
- Answer Phone
- Voice Recorder
- Customized Screen
- Voice Announce
- Post blog
- Yahoo! Keitai viewing/setting
- PC Site Browser viewing/setting
- Bookmarks/ Saved Pages
- BookSurfing®/e-Book Viewer
- Mobile Widget
- S! Quick News
- S! Information Channel/Weather
- Content Key obtaining/backup
- Voice Dial
- S! GPS Navi
- Data Folder*
- Music Player
- Digital TV
- Bar Code Reader
- Receive via Infrared/Bluetooth®
- IC Data transmission
- Alarm
- Dictionary
- Pedometer
- Reset Settings/All Reset
- Software Update

* Font setting is available.

Activating/Canceling Personal Data Lock

<Default> Deactivate


- While locked,  appears in Standby.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Personal Data Lock

1 Enter Phone Password → **Activate/Deactivate**

- To cancel Personal Data Lock, repeat operation. If Timer Lock at Close is set, password entry is requested when handset is opened.

Canceling Personal Data Lock Temporarily

When Phone Password is entered,  disappears and disabled functions become temporarily available.

- Once handset returns to Standby while no functions are active, Personal Data Lock is active again.
- Some functions remain unavailable. Deactivate Personal Data Lock to use the following:
 - Receiving IC data
 - Reject unknown

Note

- While Personal Data Lock is set, some indicators do not appear in Standby. They appear after lock is canceled.
- Turning off power does not cancel Personal Data Lock.

Customizing Personal Data Lock

Enable/disable Alarm, incoming message notification, etc. while Personal Data Lock is active.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Personal Data Lock

1 Enter Phone Password → **Customize** → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Alarm Tone	Enable/disable Alarms (Calendar, TV timer, or other alerts) or TV Timer Recording. > Select an item → Accept (Enable) or Not Accept (Disable)
Incoming Call Act	Show/hide Event Indicator (incoming messages) or Phone Book entry information (incoming calls). > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Incoming Message → Accept (Show indicator) or Not Accept (Hide indicator) Phone Book Available → Accept (Show Phone Book Entry information) or Not Accept (Hide information)
Display/Tone	Enable/disable Display settings, ringtones or indicators. > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Internal Display → Accept (Enable Display Settings) or Not Accept (Disable) Ring Tones → Accept (Enable Sound Settings) or Not Accept (Disable) S! Quick News → Accept (Show information) or Not Accept (Hide information) S! Info Ch./Weather → Accept (Show indicators) or Not Accept (Hide indicators) Widget Contents → Accept (Show widgets) or Not Accept (Hide widgets)

Showing Personal Data Lock OFF Window when Opening Handset

<Default> OFF

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Lock OFF at Open

- 1 Enter Phone Password
- 2 **Personal Data Lock** → ON

Note

- When Timer Lock at Close and Lock OFF at Open are both active, canceling Personal Data Lock when opening handset temporarily cancels lock. However, lock activates again when specified time elapses after closing handset.

Activating Lock when Closing Handset

<Default> Keyguard: OFF
Personal Data Lock: OFF

Set **Timer Lock at Close** to automatically activate Keyguard or Personal Data Lock when specified time has elapsed after handset is closed.

- While set,  appears in Standby.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Timer Lock at Close

- 1 Enter Phone Password
- 2 **Keyguard** or **Personal Data Lock** → Select a time
When **Personal Data Lock** is selected, confirmation appears asking whether to activate Lock OFF at Open.
 - When **OFF** is selected, setting is canceled.

Secure Remote Lock

If handset is lost or stolen, remotely lock handset from a PC or mobile. If Secure Remote Lock is active, all operations are unavailable except to turn handset on.

- For service details and user agreement/registration, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>) or My SoftBank.

Accessing My SoftBank from Handset (Japanese)

For service details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► メニューリスト ► My SoftBank
► English

Follow onscreen instructions.

Note

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable even while Secure Remote Lock is set.

Showing Messages during Secure Remote Lock

<Default> OFF

Set Display message to appear when Secure Remote Lock is active.

- Use preset message or create a message.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Lock Message

1 Enter Phone Password

2 *Display Setting* → ON

■ Save Lock Messages

> After Step 1, *Message* → Enter a message

Key Pad Dial Lock

<Default> Deactivate

Allow dialing only from Phone Book entries and lock dialing with keypad. Unauthorized use of handset can be prevented.

- While locked,  appears in Standby.

Unavailable Operations

- Dialing with keypad
- Phone Book (saving, editing, deleting, copying from microSD Card, and sending/receiving via Infrared, IC transmission and Bluetooth®)
- Sending S! Mail/SMS (manually entering addresses)

Available Operations

- Dialing from Phone Book or Voice Dial
- Dialing from Redial, Outgoing Call Logs, Incoming Call Logs, Sent address, or Received address (only phone numbers/mail addresses saved in Phone Book)

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Key Pad Dial Lock

1 Enter Phone Password

- To cancel Key Pad Dial Lock, repeat operation.

Note

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, 118) are dialable even while Key Pad Dial Lock is set.

Additional Lock Functions

IC Card Lock

Deactivate Osaifu-Keitai® functions (P.13-12).

Remote Lock

Deactivate Osaifu-Keitai® functions remotely (P.13-12).

Restricting Calls/Messages

Hiding Call Logs and Sent/Received Address List

<Default> ON

Main Menu ► Settings ► Incoming Settings ► Call Logs

- 1 Enter Phone Password
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Incoming	Show/hide Incoming Call Logs/Received address list
Outgoing	Show/hide Redial/Outgoing Call Logs/Sent address list

3 OFF

Note

- While Incoming Call Logs is **OFF**, Answer Phone (Voice Calls) does not play. Selecting Missed Call indicator does not show Incoming Call Logs.

Secret Mode/Secret Data Only

<Default> Deactivate

Phone Book entries and calendar events saved as secret data appear only when Secret Mode/Secret Data Only is active.

- Set Phone Book or Calendar events as secret data (Phone Book: P.4-7, 4-8 / Calendar events: P.13-5)

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security

- 1 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Secret Mode	View all data including secret data <ul style="list-style-type: none"> While set, appears in Standby.
Secret Data Only	View only secret data <ul style="list-style-type: none"> While set, flashes in Standby.

- 2 Enter Phone Password

For Secret Data Only, number of saved secret data appears.

Cancel Secret Mode/Secret Data Only

> In Standby, or follow Step 1 above

- disappears.
- When widgets are shown, to hide and press again.

Cancel Secret Mode/Secret Setting

> In Phone Book/Calendar event window,  [Menu] → *Release secret*

Note

- Select whether to save data edited/saved in Secret Mode as secret data.
Data saved/edited in Secret Data Only are saved as secret data.
- Turn off handset to cancel secret setting.

Tip


Settings ● Disable Learning for Secret Mode/Secret Data Only (☞P.18-11)

Setting Secret Mail

<Default> ON

Hide messages to/from secret Phone Book entries.

- Even if Secret Mail Display is set to **OFF**, secret mail appears when Secret Mode/Secret Data Only is active.

1  → *Settings*

2 *Universal Settings* → *Secret Mail Display*

3 Enter Phone Password

4 **OFF**


Note

- When both Spam Filter and Secret Mail Display are set, messages from Phone Book entries saved as secret mode are sorted into Spam Folder (Safe List: ☞P.14-17).


Mail Security

Set handset to require Phone Password for opening mail boxes or operating Server Mail.

-  appears for set mail boxes and Server Mail box.

1  → **Settings**


2 **Universal Settings** → **Mail Security**

3 Enter Phone Password → Check items →  **[Finish]**

■ **Set/Cancel Mail Security by Incoming Mail or Sent/Unsent Folder**

>  → **Incoming Mail** or **Sent/Unsent** → Highlight a folder →


 **[Menu]** → **Mail Security** → Enter Phone Password

-  appears for set folders.

Call Restrictions


Reject/accept/forward calls from specified phone numbers, or restrict calling unspecified phone numbers.

1  → Search Phone Book

2 Select an entry →  **[Menu]** → **Restrictions**

3 Enter Phone Password

4 Select an item (See below)


Item	Operation/Description
Restrict Dialing	Allow calls only to specified numbers
Call Rejection	Reject specified numbers
Call Acceptance	Accept from specified numbers only
Call Forwarding	Automatically forward specified numbers <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Set destination numbers (Call Forwarding:  P.2-18)

- To cancel, repeat operation.

■ **View/Cancel Phone Book Restrictions**

> **Main Menu** ► **Phone** ► **Restrictions** ► Enter Phone Password
 ► Select an item* ► Select a Phone Book entry ► Select a number
 ► **YES**

* ★ appears for set item.

- Highlight an item,  **[Menu]** → **Release Settings** → **YES** to cancel restriction on all specified numbers.

Note

- Missed call indicator appears in Standby for calls from rejected numbers.

Delaying Ringtone

<Default> OFF

Delay ringtone/vibration for Voice/Video Calls from unknown numbers.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Incoming Settings
► Ring Time Settings ► Ring Starting Time

1 **ON** → Enter start time

■ Hide Missed Call Records (Disconnected during Ringtone Delay)

> Main Menu ► Settings ► Incoming Settings
► Ring Time Settings ► Missed Calls Display ► Not Display

Rejecting Unknown Callers

<Default> Accept

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Reject Unknown

1 Enter Phone Password → **Reject**

Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

<Default> Accept

Reject calls without Caller ID or from pay phones.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Call Setting w/o ID

1 Enter Phone Password

2 Select an item → **Reject**

Reset

Reset Settings

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► Reset Settings

1 Enter Phone Password → **YES**

Note

- Some default settings may not be restored.
- Reset Settings cancels Navi Appli settings in S! GPS Navi. Set a Navi Appli to activate from **Select Navi Appli** (P.18-25).

All Reset

Cancel custom settings and return handset functions to their default settings; clear all Phone Book/Data Folder entries etc.

Main Menu ► Settings ► Security ► All Reset

1 Enter Phone Password → **YES** → **YES**
Handset automatically turns off and restarts.

Note

- Fully charge battery (🔋) beforehand.
- Phone Password is reset to default.
- USIM Card/microSD Card files are not affected.
- Data transmission settings (set via PC) are not affected.
- Non-restorable items when deleted by All Reset:
 - Customized settings, Call Logs, downloaded S! Appli, etc.

Calendar 13-2

Opening Calendar	13-2
Creating Calendar Events	13-2
Saving Holidays/Memorial Days	13-3
Viewing/Editing Calendar Event Details	13-4
Calendar Functions	13-4

Tasks 13-5

Saving a Task	13-5
Using Tasks	13-6

Alarms 13-6

Alarm Tone	13-6
Setting Alarm	13-7

Calculator 13-8

Notepad 13-8

Saving a Note	13-8
Notepad Functions	13-9

Osaifu Keitai® 13-9

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli	13-10
Activating Lifestyle-Appli	13-10
Reader/Writer Transactions	13-11
IC Card Lock	13-12

Dictionary (Japanese) 13-13

Sound Recorders 13-14

Voice Recorder	13-14
Voice Announce	13-14

Bar Code Reader 13-15

Scanning Barcodes	13-15
Viewing/Editing Scanned Data	13-16
Using Scanned Data	13-16

Pedometer 13-17

Activating/Deactivating Pedometer	13-17
Pedometer Functions	13-18

Calendar

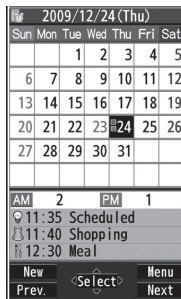
View by day, week or month; set Alarms for events.

Opening Calendar

Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar

Current month appears.

- When a date with Calendar events is selected, number of AM and PM events and up to three contents appear.
- Press [Prev.] or [Next] to show previous/next month calendar.
- To switch Monthly/Weekly view: P.13-4



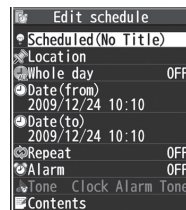
Monthly View

Creating Calendar Events

Save up to 1000 entries.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar

- 1 to highlight a date → [New] → *Schedule*



- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Select icon/ Edit summary	> Select an icon → Edit subject
Edit location	> Enter location
Whole day setting	> OFF or ON ● When ON is set, Alarm goes off at 0:00 a.m.
Date (from)	> Enter start date and time
Date (to)	> Enter end date and time
Repeat	> Select a repeat type → (For Select day , check days → [Finish])
Alarm	> Select an Alarm type (→ For ON/Set time , enter time) ● Alarm Tone: P.13-6
Alarm tone	> Select an Alarm tone type → Select a folder → Select an Alarm tone
Contents	> Enter event description

3 [Finish]

Calendar Event Indicators

Following indicators appear in Calendar Window.

- (Blue): Morning event
- (Orange): Afternoon event
- (Underscore): Event that lasts for two days or longer
- Following indicators appear on Display.
 - : Alarm
 - : Monthly
 - : Daily
 - : Yearly
 - : Weekly

Note

- Calendar events between 00:00 on 2000/01/01 and 23:59 on 2037/12/31 can be saved on handset.
- Alarm tone does not sound when Privacy Key Lock or Personal Data Lock is set. However, settings can be changed even while Personal Data Lock is set (→P.12-6).

Saving Holidays/Memorial Days

Save up to 100 entries (one entry a day) each for Holidays or Memorial days.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar

- 1 (Highlight a date →) [New] → *Holidays* or *Memorial days*
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Date setting	> Enter a date
Repeat	> Select a repeat type <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● 1 time does not repeat Holidays/Memorial days events.
Edit holiday/anniversary	> Enter description

3 [Finish]

Indicators

Holidays appear in red.

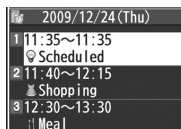
Memorial days are marked with a red circle.

- Following indicators appear in Calendar/Calendar Event List Window:
 - : Holidays
 - : Memorial days
 - : Yearly repeat

Viewing/Editing Calendar Event Details

Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar



1  to select a date

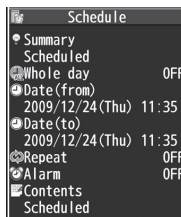


Calendar Event List

2 Select an event

Detailed schedule appears.

- To edit:  [Edit] → Edit selected item (Schedule:  From Step 2 on P.13-2/ Holiday, Anniversary:  From Step 2 on P.13-3)



Calendar Event Details




Calendar Functions

From ► Main Menu ► Tools ► Calendar


Functions Available in Calendar Window



> Highlight a date →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Create a new entry ( P.13-2, P.13-3)

Item	Operation/Description
Weekly display/ 1 Month	Toggle Monthly/Weekly view
Icon display	Entries in category of selected icon appear > Select an icon
No. of schedules	Display number of saved Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary entries
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut ( P.1-23)
Send all Ir data	( P.11-3)
All IC transmission	( P.11-5)
Delete past	Delete past entries/items, prior to highlighted date > Select a category to delete → YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → Select an item → YES
Reset holidays	Restore deleted Holidays > YES

Functions Available in Calendar Events List/Details

> Select a date (→ Select a Schedule, Holiday or Anniversary) →
 [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
New	Create a new entry ( P.13-2, P.13-3)
Edit	Edit selected item ( Left)
Copy	Copy an entry to another day > Enter date and time to copy an entry to
Calendar display	Switch from Icon display to Calendar display

Item	Operation/Description
Icon display	Entries in category of selected icon appear > Select an icon
Set secret mode/ Release secret	Activate/deactivate Secret Mode > YES (→ For Set secret mode , enter Phone Password) ● Secret entries appear only in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only (↗P.12-10).
Compose S! Mail	Create S! Mail by copying event date and content to message text (↗From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Send Ir data	(↗P.11-3)
Send all Ir data	(↗P.11-3)
IC transmission	(↗P.11-5)
ALLIC transmission	(↗P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy an entry to microSD Card > YES ● To display data on microSD Card: ↗P.10-18
Delete this	> YES
Delete past	Delete past entries/items, prior to highlighted date > Select a category to delete → YES
Delete select	> Check entries to delete → [Finish] → YES

Tasks

Make quick notes of task to manage in Task list.

Saving a Task

Main Menu ► Tools ► Tasks

- 1 [New] → Select an item (See below)
 - To check saved Tasks, select a Task. To edit, press [Edit] in detail window.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit Tasks	> Enter content
Due date	> Select how to enter due date → Enter due date ● Select No date to enter none.
Priority	> Select a priority level
Category	> Select a category
Alarm	> Select an Alarm type (→ For ON/Set time , enter time) ● Alarm Tone: ↗P.13-6
Alarm tone	> Select an Alarm tone type → Select a folder → Select an Alarm tone










- 2 [Finish]
 - When content is not entered, Tasks cannot be saved.

Note

- Alarm tone does not sound when Privacy Key Lock or Personal Data Lock is set. However, settings can be changed even while Personal Data Lock is set (↗P.12-6).

Using Tasks

In Tasks window, press [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
New	Create a new entry ( P.13-5)
Edit	Edit an entry ( P.13-5)
Change status	Change status indicator shown in Tasks list > Select a status (→ For Completion , select an item → Enter Completion date) ● Overdue status indicator turns red.
Show by category	> Select a category
Sort/Filter	Sort list by due date, entry order, status, etc. > Select a condition
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut ( P.1-23)
Send Ir data	( P.11-3)
Send all Ir data	( P.11-3)
IC transmission	( P.11-5)
AllIC transmission	( P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy a Task to microSD Card > YES ● To display data on microSD Card:  P.10-18
Delete this	> YES
Delete select	> Check entries →  [Finish] → YES
Delete completed	Delete an entry in Completion status > YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → YES

Alarms

Alarm Tone

When scheduled time arrives, alarm tone sounds and Notification Light illuminates.

- For Calendar events and Tasks, alarm message and animation corresponding to selected icon appear on Display.

To Stop Alarm Tone for Calendar Events, Tasks or Alarm

Press any key.

Missed Alarm

"Missed alarm" Event Indicator appears in Standby for alarms missed during Privacy Key Lock, Personal Data Lock or Infrared transmission once locks are canceled or transmission ends. Select indicator to view content.

Note

- When one or more Alarms are set to the same time, alarm sounds in the order of : "Alarm" → "Timer Recording" → "Tasks" → "Calendar" → "Timer Watching"
 For Tasks, "Missed alarm" indicator appears.

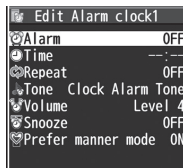
Setting Alarm

Set up to 12 alarms. Alarm tone sounds at the specified time once, everyday or weekly as set.



-  appears in Standby when Alarm is set.

Main Menu ▶ Tools ▶ Alarms

- 1 Highlight an Alarm →  [Edit]



- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Alarm (Alarm on/off)	Activate or cancel Alarm > ON or OFF
Time setting	> Set Alarm time
Repeat	> Select a repeat type (→ For Select day , check days →  [Finish])
Alarm tone	> Select an Alarm tone type → Select a folder → Select an Alarm tone
Alarms (Alarm volume)	>  to set Alarm tone volume
Snooze setting	When Snooze is set to ON , Alarm tone sounds for 60 seconds, repeating up to six times at five minute intervals. > ON or OFF (→ For OFF , enter time)
Prefer manner mode	Set Manner Mode or Alarm priority. > ON or OFF

3 [Finish]


Alarm Indicators

- Following indicators appear:

 : Repeats daily  : Repeats weekly

■ Cancel & Reactivate Alarm

> In Step 1 (highlight an Alarm),  [Menu] → Select an item → **YES**

- Cancel or reactivate an alarm entry as required.
- Highlight an entry →  to reactivate/cancel Alarm.

Snooze Function

If **ON**, press any key; Snooze window appears. To cancel Alarm, press .

Note

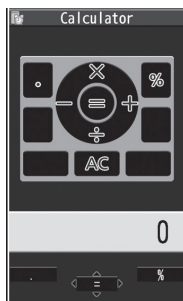
- Alarm tone does not sound when Privacy Key Lock or Personal Data Lock is set. However, settings can be changed even while Personal Data Lock is set (➡ P.12-6).

Calculator

- Calculates up to 10 digits.

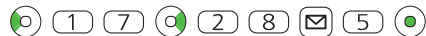
Main Menu ► Tools ► Calculator

Operation	Assigned key
Number (0 - 9)	-
+	
-	
x	
÷	
=	
Decimal point	
%	
Clear	



Example:

-17+28.5=11.5



Notepad

Save up to 20 notes.

Saving a Note

Main Menu ► Tools ► Notepad

1 <Not Recorded>

- Select a saved note to view content.
 [Edit] to edit.


2 Enter text


- Up to 256 double-byte or 512 single-byte characters can be entered.



Notepads Window

Notepad Functions

In Notepad list window, press  [Menu] for following operations.

Item	Operation/Description
Edit	Edit a saved note
Compose S! Mail	Create S! Mail by copying content to message text (☞ From Step 2 on P.14-4)
Edit schedule	Copy a note to Schedule to create a Calendar event > Schedule → Save a new note (☞ From Step 2 on P.13-2)
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut (☞ P.1-23)
Send Ir data	(☞ P.11-3)
Send all Ir data	(☞ P.11-3)
IC transmission	(☞ P.11-5)
AIIC transmission	(☞ P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy a note to microSD Card > YES ● To display data on microSD Card: ☞ P.10-18
Notepad Info	Display entry date, latest modified date and category of note
Category	> Select a category ● When no category applies, select None .
Delete this	> YES
Delete selected	> Check notes →  [Finish] → YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → YES

Osaifu-Keitai®

"Osaifu-Keitai®" is a range of IC Card-based services used by Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handsets. Make purchases using e-money or e-ticketing. Hold handset up to a reader/writer to pay for your purchase.

■ Osaifu-Keitai® Terms

Osaifu-Keitai®	A contactless IC Card technology to read/write data by holding an IC card up to a reader/writer
IC Card	An IC chip embedded in Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible handsets
Lifestyle-Appli	Applications to use Osaifu-Keitai®. Some applications are preinstalled.

Precautions

- Data saved in IC Card vary by service content and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli. Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.
- SoftBank is not liable for damages from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.
- IC Card data can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Downloading Lifestyle-Appli and using applications may incur high packet transmission charges.

Getting Started

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet website.

Registration/Settings

Activate Lifestyle-Appli to complete registration or customize settings.

- Make deposit into account, check payment records or balance, etc.

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords/customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli


Main Menu ► Tools ► Osaifu-Keitai ► Lifestyle-Appli

- 1 **Download** → **YES**
- 2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli
 - Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Data Folder.

Activating Lifestyle-Appli

- Lifestyle-Appli cannot be activated during a call or while another S! Appli is active.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Osaifu-Keitai ► Lifestyle-Appli

- 1 Select a Lifestyle-Appli
- 2 To exit,  → **Stopped**

Note

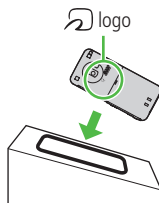
- Alternatively, Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Osaifu-Keitai ► Lifestyle-Appli
or
Main Menu ► Data Folder ► Lifestyle-Appli

Reader/Writer Transactions


- Complete registration/settings and charge your account beforehand.
- There is no need to activate a Lifestyle-Appli during transaction.

1 Hold logo up to reader/writer

- When IC Card Notification Light is **ON**, Notification Light illuminates (☞P.18-10).
- Hold handset parallel to reader/writer.
Try moving handset around if recognition is slow.
- Check scan result on reader/writer display.
- Osaifu-Keitai® can be used during a call or Internet transmission (May require extra time.).



Note

- Data may be unreadable if a metal object, etc. is between  logo and reader/writer.
- Even though Osaifu-Keitai® is available while handset is off, Lifestyle-Appli does not activate. However, if battery is left uncharged after warning tone sounds, Osaifu-Keitai® may become disabled. Charge battery beforehand.
- When handset is held up to reader/writer, handset may show a message or vibrate depending on service. S! Appli, Messaging or Internet may also activate automatically. To avoid such cases, set the functions not to activate during transactions (☞P.18-21).

Tip

Settings


- Disable Handset Response to Commands from Reader/Writer (☞P.18-24)

IC Card Lock

Activating IC Card Lock

<Default> OFF

- While set,  appears in Standby.

1 Press and hold  → Enter Phone Password

- Repeat the step as required to unlock.

Note

- Alternatively, **Main Menu** ► **Tools** ► **Osaifu-Keitai** ► **IC Card Settings** ► **IC Card Lock** or **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Security** ► **IC Card Lock**

Remote Lock



<Default> OFF

- Save up to three phone numbers to enable Remote Lock.

Main Menu ► **Tools** ► **Osaifu-Keitai** ► **IC Card Settings** ► **Remote Lock**

1 Enter Phone Password → **ON**

2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Numbers to Permit	Save numbers to activate Remote Lock > <Not Recorded> → Enter phone numbers →  [Return] • To save numbers from Phone Book/Incoming Call Logs or to use a payphone number:  [Menu] → Refer to or Payphone
# of Incoming Call	Specify the number of incoming calls for activating IC Card Lock > Enter a number

3  [Set]

Activating Remote Lock

- ① Call 940P from one of the specified numbers (Send Caller ID)
- ② Hang up after 940P receives the call
- ③ Repeat ①-② until specified number of incoming calls is reached (within three minutes)
 - After specified number of incoming calls, IC Card Lock is set and a message informs you IC Card Lock is activated.

Note

- When setting IC Card Lock, call 940P from the same specified phone number. Incoming calls from different phone numbers cannot be counted.
- Specified incoming calls may not be counted when Call Forwarding is active.
- Remote Lock is not available when ring time for Answer Phone is set to 0 or Driving Mode is active.
- When Answer Phone activates, counted number of incoming calls are reset.

Dictionary (Japanese)

Use ケータイTOOL<辞書> to access dictionaries (学研 辞スバ英和・和英辞書 and 学研 国語辞書).

- ケータイTOOL<辞書> is an S! Appli.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Dictionary




1 Read 免責 (disclaimer) → OK

ケータイTOOL<辞書> activates.

- To disable 免責:
Uncheck アプリ起動時に常に表示する。 (Always show disclaimer when accessing dictionaries)

2 → Enter a word

Search results appear.


- To scroll pages: (1)/(3)
- To switch dictionaries:  / 
- To search again:  [戻る]

3 Select a word

Details appear.

4 To end, → Stopped

Note

- While Dictionary application is active, press  [メニュー] for useful functions.

Sound Recorders

Voice Recorder

Set recorded sounds for ringtones.

- Record for about 60 seconds each.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Sound Recorders ► Voice Recorder

1 YES

Recording starts.

2 [Stop] / (→ OK) to stop recording

Recorded sounds are saved in Ring Songs&Tones folder.

Voice Announce

Set recorded sound for on hold tone/holding tone, Alarm, Calendar event alarm, Tasks alarm, ringtones, Answer Phone message, Timer Watching (Digital TV), Ring Songs&Tones Play List.

- Record only one item for about 15 seconds.
- Select **Voice Announce** in individual window to set Voice Announce as specific tone.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Sound Recorders ► Voice Announce

1 Record

Recording starts.

Tone beeps five seconds before recording ends.

2 [Stop] to end recording

Tone beeps twice and previous screen returns.

- To play back: **Play**
- To delete: **Erase → YES**

Bar Code Reader

Scan barcodes (JAN) or QR Codes with built-in camera.
Access websites, send messages, etc. from QR Codes.

JAN Codes

JAN Code is a one-dimensional bar code denoting numerals with bars and spaces of different widths.

QR Codes

QR Code is a two-dimensional bar code containing information.

Example: SoftBank mobile phones



Scanning Barcodes

- Up to five items can be saved.
- For split data, up to 16 QR Codes can be scanned at a time and saved as one item.

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bar Code Reader ► Scan Barcodes

1 Frame barcode in the center of Display

- To adjust Display brightness: [Menu] → **Brightness** → Adjust to -3 (dark) - +3 (light)
- To zoom:
- To use Focus Lock:

2 [Start]

Scanning starts, and scanned results appear when completed.

- For split data, **OK** → Repeat Step 1 and 2
- To use scanned data: Step 2 on P.13-16

3 [Menu] → **Save result** → **OK**

- To start over: → **YES**

Note

- Handset cannot read barcodes or two-dimensional codes other than JAN/QR Codes.
- Some barcodes may be unreadable.
- Barcode recognition may be slow. Hold handset steady while scanning.
- Barcodes may not be correctly read owing to scratch, dirt, damage, quality of printed material, light reflection, or QR code version.

Viewing/Editing Scanned Data

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bar Code Reader ► Saved Data List

1 View

Select an item

Edit Title

Highlight an item → [Menu] → *Edit title* → Edit

Delete Saved Data

> In Step 1, (highlight an item →) [Menu] → *Delete* → *Delete this* or *Delete all* (→ For *Delete all*, enter Phone Password) → *YES*

Using Scanned Data

Main Menu ► Tools ► Bar Code Reader ► Saved Data List

1 Select an item

2 [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Save result	Save scanned results
Display list	Display Saved Data List
Internet	Connect to URL > <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> or <i>PC Site Browser</i> → <i>YES</i> ● Alternatively, select URL to connect to Internet.
Compose S! Mail	Create S! Mail to selected address (➡ From Step 4 on P.14-4) ● Alternatively, select address to create S! Mail.
Dialing	Call selected phone number > Select a dialing method → <i>Dial</i> ● Alternatively, select phone number to dial.
Add to Phone Book	Save scanned results to Phone Book (➡ From Step 2 on P. 4-5)
Add bookmark	Save URL to Bookmark > <i>YES</i> → [OK]
Copy	Copy selected characters to another place (➡ From Step 2 on P.3-10)

Pedometer

Use Pedometer to track distance walked or calories/fat burned.

Notes

- Set Date and Time to use Pedometer.
- Place handset in a pocket or compartment when carrying in a bag.

Using Pedometer

- Accurate results are obtained when steps are counted based on a fixed pace (100 to 120 steps per minute).
- Accuracy may be affected by walking style or other factors. Use Pedometer only as a rough indication.
- Steps are not counted for first few steps or after walking pace is changed. Pedometer starts counting after 10 steps or more.
- Steps are not counted while handset is off or software is being updated.
- Steps are not counted:
 - when bag swings against you, resulting in handset hitting your leg/waist; or any other irregular swinging movements (handset dangling from bag or pocket).
 - when walking slowly or dragging feet
 - during sports activities or jogging

Activating/Deactivating Pedometer

<Default> OFF

Main Menu ► Tools

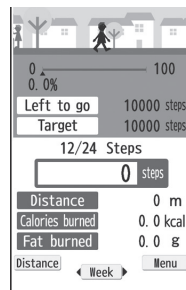
1 Pedometer

Pedometer window appears.

2 [Menu] → Pedometer setting → ON





Counting starts.

- To stop: **OFF**



Pedometer Window

Operations in Pedometer Window

Show Previous/Next Day	 <ul style="list-style-type: none">● View previous week/month or next week/month data while weekly/monthly view is open.
Toggle Daily/Weekly/Monthly	 <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Toggle: Day → Week → Month
Toggle Information	 <ul style="list-style-type: none">● Toggle: Steps → Distance → Calories → Fat
Toggle Views	 <ul style="list-style-type: none">● In weekly/monthly view, toggle: Text → List → Graph

Note

- Data is updated each time Pedometer window opens. While Pedometer window remains open, data is not updated.
- Pedometer record is saved every 15 minutes.
- Steps taken between 0:00 and 23:59 are recorded as that day's record. Handset saves up to 92 records.
- Pedometer record cannot be reset even when Pedometer setting is set to **OFF**. Set to **ON** to resume counting.

Pedometer Functions

In Pedometer window,  [Menu] for following operations:

Item	Operation/Description
Pedometer setting	Activate/deactivate Pedometer > ON or OFF
User setting	Set weight and stride length. User information is used to calculate distance walked and calories/fat burned. > Enter weight → Enter stride length
Target steps	Set target steps per day > Enter target steps
Delete all records	> Enter Phone Password → YES
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut (P.1-23)

Note

- Entering target steps will automatically calculate other target values.

Messaging

Basics..... 14-2

Available Entry Items & Character Entry Limits.....	14-2
Messaging Folders & Memory Status.....	14-3
Customizing Handset Address.....	14-3

Sending S! Mail & SMS..... 14-4

Sending S! Mail.....	14-4
Sending SMS Messages.....	14-7
Creating Messages.....	14-8
Graphic Mail Functions.....	14-9
Sending Options.....	14-10

Receiving & Viewing Messages..... 14-10

Opening New Messages.....	14-10
Window Description.....	14-11
Retrieving Complete S! Mail.....	14-12
Opening & Saving Attachments.....	14-13
Showing Sent/Received Mail Address.....	14-13
Using Server Mail.....	14-14
Retrieving/Viewing Messages.....	14-14

Organizing/Using Messages..... 14-15

Checking Messages in Messaging Folders.....	14-15
Auto-sort.....	14-16
Filter Spam.....	14-17
Replying to Messages.....	14-18
Using Mail Groups.....	14-18
Sent/Received Address.....	14-19
Organizing Messages.....	14-20
Using Messages.....	14-22

Basics

Send messages via S! Mail or SMS.

S! Mail [Separate subscription required]	Exchange text messages with SoftBank or e-mail compatible handsets, PCs, etc.; attach image or sound files etc. ● 940P is compatible with Graphic Mail (P.14-5)
SMS	Exchange short text messages with SoftBank handsets.

- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Available Entry Items & Character Entry Limits

Item		S! Mail		SMS	
Address	E-mail address	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 246 single-byte alphanumerics/ Up to 20 recipients	—	—
	Phone number ¹	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	Up to 21 single-byte alphanumerics/Up to 1 recipient
Subject		<input type="radio"/>	Up to 256 double-byte/ Up to 512 single-byte alphanumerics	—	—
Text		<input type="radio"/>	30 KB	<input type="radio"/>	Up to 70 double-/single-byte alphanumerics ²
Attachment		<input type="radio"/>	³	—	—

¹ SoftBank handset numbers only

² When text entry mode is set to **English (160char.)** (P.18-22), up to 160 single-byte alphanumerics can be entered.

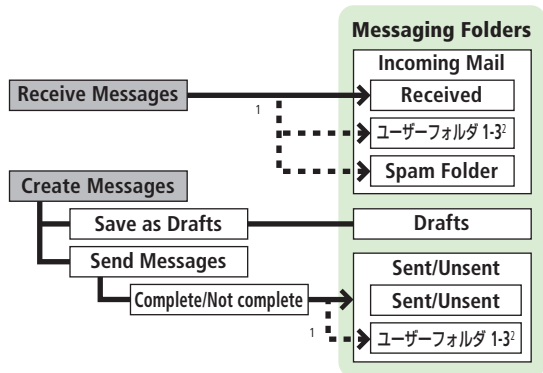
³ Up to 300 KB including subject, message text and attachment can be sent.

Note

- S! Mail text character limit differs by attachment size.
- SMS messages can be converted to S! Mail (P.14-7).
- S! Mail cannot be converted to SMS.

Messaging Folders & Memory Status

Messages are organized in folders by message type.



¹ Set Auto-sort messages to specified folders or Spam Folder automatically (P.14-16, P.14-17).

² Add up to ten folders (P.14-20).

Deleting Messages Automatically

When memory for messaging folders is low, old messages are automatically deleted one by one. Protect important messages from unintentional deletion (P.14-21), or set message deletion settings to **OFF** (P.18-20, P.18-21). Messages in Drafts and SMS on USIM Card are not deleted automatically.

When Messaging Memory is Full

☑ (Received Full) appears in Standby and no more new incoming messages are received. Delete old messages in Incoming Mail folder (P.14-21), then retrieve new messages (P.14-14).

View Memory Status

> ☑ → *Memory Status*

Tip

● Mail Security (P.12-12)

Customizing Handset Address

Change your handset mail address (alphanumerics before @) to reduce the risk of receiving spam. Default account name is random alphanumerics.

abc123-xyz @ softbank.ne.jp
└ Account ┐ └ Domain ┐
Name Name
(Customize here)

- For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- Handset mail address cannot be changed in Offline Mode.
- For operations while using Internet: P.15-6

1 ☑ → *Settings* → *Custom Mail Address*

Handset connects to the Network.
Follow onscreen instructions.

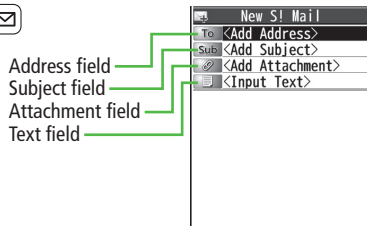
Sending S! Mail & SMS

Sending S! Mail

- Text entry (☞P.3-2)

Example: Select a Phone Book entry to send S! Mail.

- 1 Press and hold [Envelope]



Composition Window

- 2 Select Address field →
Phone Book

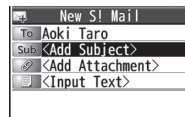


- 3 Select a Phone Book entry →
Select a SoftBank handset number
or mail address

- Press [Tab] to toggle tabs if both mail addresses and phone numbers are saved.

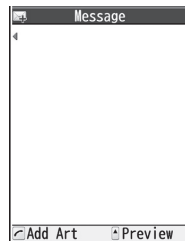


- 4 Select Subject field →
Enter subject



- 5 Select Text field

- 6 Enter text



Text Entry Window


- 7 [Envelope] [Send]



Tip










- Addresses ●Functions Available while Creating Messages (☞P.14-8)
- Sending Options (☞P.14-10)
- Settings** ●Request Delivery Confirmation (☞P.18-20)
- Set Reply-to Address ●Set Signature (☞P.18-21)

Adding Attachments

- 1 After Step 6 on P.14-4, select Attachment field
- 2 Select a folder in Data Folder → Select a file
- 3  [Send]



■ Attach Captured Pictures/Videos

- After Step 1, **Activate Camera** → **Photo mode** or **Video mode** → Frame subject →  [Record],  or  (→ For video,  [Stop],  or  →  [Save],  or 

Note

- Some files can not be attached depending on the file format or size.
- Some copy protected files can not be sent.
- Attachments of 300 KB or larger are automatically compressed (Width and height of compressed images may change.). Even with compressed file, if message exceeds maximum size, message cannot be sent.
- Ring Songs&Tones, Music and Videos files cannot be attached directly from microSD Card. Move files to handset before attaching to messages.

Tip





- Attachments (P.14-8)

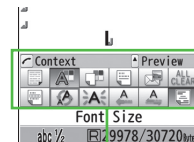
Graphic Mail

Create HTML messages; select font color/size, background color, or insert images, etc.

Example: Use various Templates to create Graphic Mail.


- Change font size
- Scroll text



- 1 After Step 4 on P.14-4,  [Menu] → **Load Template** → Select a template
 - To view template: Highlight template →  [View]
- 2 Select Text field → Delete "ここに文字をいれてね"
- 3  → **Font Size**
 - Alternatively,  [Menu] → **Set Graphic Mail** to open Graphic Palette




Graphic Palette

4 Select a font size → Enter text

5  → **Select area**


6 Place cursor before a sentence to scroll →  **[Start]** → Move cursor to end of sentence →  **[End]**

Text is highlighted.

● To cancel selection: 

7 **Set Scrolling** →  **[Exit]**


8  to preview → 

● Alternatively,  **[Menu]** → **Preview** to view text field

9  →  **[Send]**



Reset Operations



> To cancel previous operation: Close Graphic Palette →  **[Menu]** → **Undo**

> To reset all Graphic Mail operations:  → **Graphic all reset** → **YES** → **YES**

Use Mail Art

> In text entry window,  → **Mail Art** → Select an item →  **[Exit]**

Use Files Saved in microSD Card

> In text entry window,  → **Insert files** → **File Select** → Select a folder →  **[microSD]** → Select a folder → Select a file


Tip

● Use Other Graphic Mail Settings ● Download Templates via Internet
(P.14-9)

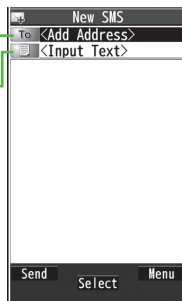
Sending SMS Messages

- Text entry (P.3-2)

Example: Select a Phone Book entry to send SMS.

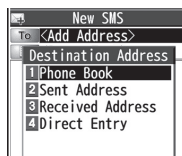
- 1  →
Create New SMS

Address field
Text field



Composition Window

- 2 Select Address field →
Phone Book



- 3 Select a Phone Book entry →
Select a SoftBank handset number

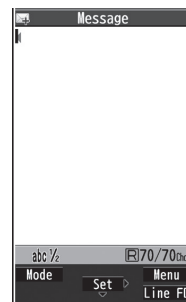


- 4 Select Text field

- 5 Enter text


- When number of entered character exceeds limit, S! Mail conversion option message appears.

- 6  [Send]



Text Entry Window

Manual Mail Conversion

> In SMS Composition window,  [Menu] → **Change mail type**

Note

- When a single-byte text message including | { } [] ^ is sent or a draft including such text is edited, some characters may be cut out of text field.

Tip

- Addresses ● Functions Available while Creating Messages (P.14-8)
- Settings** ● Request Delivery Confirmation (P.18-20) ● Change SMS Center Number ● Set Input Character to English (P.18-22)

Creating Messages

Addresses

From ► Composition window, select Address field

■ Enter Address Directly

- > S! Mail: **Address Input** or **Phone Number Input** → Enter a mail address/SoftBank handset number
- > SMS: **Direct Entry** → Enter a SoftBank handset number

■ Select Address from Sent Address/Received Address Logs

- > **Sent Address** or **Received Address** → Select a log

■ Select S! Mail Address from Mail Group

- > **Mail Group** → Select a Mail Group

■ Add/Edit/Delete Address

- > Follow the steps (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add recipients*	> <Not entered> → Search/enter address → Select an address or enter directly
Edit	> Select an address → Edit (For SMS: Direct Entry) → Edit address
Delete*	> Highlight an address → [Menu] → Delete receiver → YES

* S! Mail only

■ Change To/Cc/Bcc (S! Mail only)

- > Highlight an address → [Menu] → **Destination types** → Select a type

Attachments

From ► After attaching a file, select Attachment field

■ Open/Play Attached Files

- > Select a file

■ Add Attachments

- > [Menu] → **Add Attached Files** → Select a folder → Select a file → [Finish]
- To capture still images or videos to attach: P.14-5

■ Delete Attachments

- > Highlight a file → [Menu] → **Del Attached Files** → YES

Other Functions

■ Functions Available while Creating Messages

- > In Composition window, [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Send	Send message
Preview	Preview message
Save as Drafts	Save message to Drafts box without sending
Attached files¹	View attached file list
Load Template¹	> Select a template
Save Template¹	Save edited template > YES
Add Signature¹	Add signature ● Create and save signature beforehand (P.18-21).

Item	Operation/Description
Send Settings ¹	(P.14-10)
Image Compression ¹	Decide whether to compress images to attach > ON or OFF
Confirm Delivery ²	(P.14-10)
Input character ²	Select character input mode > Japanese or English
Change mail type ²	Switch SMS to S! Mail

¹ S! Mail only

² SMS only

Graphic Mail Functions

■ Use Other Graphic Mail Settings

> In S! Mail text entry window, (P) → Select an arrange item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Insert files	Insert still images, music or Flash® files; activate Camera and insert captured image Music files are sent as BGM > Select an item <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · File Select → Select a file type → Select a folder → Select a file · Camera → Frame subject → (P)[Record] → (P)[Save] <p>● To delete inserted music files: Delete BGM → YES</p>
Font Color	> Change font color
Background color	> Change background color

Item	Operation/Description
Insert Lines	Insert separator line
Mail Art	Insert Mail Art > Select a file
Graphic all reset	Cancel all Graphic Mail Settings > YES → YES
Select area	Specify text to be arranged > Place cursor before text → (P)[Start] → Specify area → (P)[End] → Select other items → Follow the steps for selected items <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To cancel selection: (P)[End] → (P)
Font Size	> Change font size
Select Blinking	Flash text
Set Scrolling	Scroll text
Set Swinging	Swing text
Alignment	> Select a type

- One file of music or Flash®, and up to 40 types of My Pictograms or images can be inserted per Graphic Mail.
- To delete inserted images, lines, Mail Art, etc.: Close Graphic Palette → Move cursor before images, etc. → (P)
- Ring Songs&Tones or Music files cannot be inserted directly from microSD Card. Move files to handset beforehand.

■ Save Edited Templates

> In S! Mail Composition window, (P)[Menu] → **Save Template** → **YES**

■ Download Templates via Internet

> (P) → **Templates** → **Download Templates** → **YES**

- Handset connects to the Network. Follow onscreen instructions.

Sending Options

From ► Composition window, [Menu]

Confirm Delivery

> (For S! Mail, **Send Settings** →) **Confirm Delivery** → **ON**

- Request Delivery Confirmation (P.18-20)

Notify Recipients of Message Priority Level

> **Send Settings** → **Priority** → Select a level

Set Reply-to Address

> **Send Settings** → **Set Reply Address** → **ON**

- Specify reply-to address beforehand (P.18-21)

Receiving & Viewing Messages

Retrieving S! Mail Automatically

Auto Download retrieves complete messages and any attachments.

Transmission fees are incurred; adjust to use. (To cancel Auto Download:

☞ P.18-21)

Opening New Messages

When a new message is received,

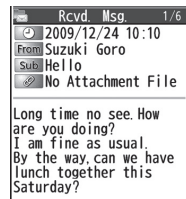
☑ and Event Indicator appear in Standby.



1 Select indicator

Newest message appears.

- to show previous/next message.



Message Window

Note

- Handset may connect to the Network via URL link in message text.
Data-intensive web pages may incur high charges.
- Message tone and Notification Light may not always sound/illuminate.
☑ flashes and tone sounds to inform of a new message.
- Event Indicator disappears even when an unread message other than latest message is selected.

Tip

- Retrieving/Viewing Messages (☞P.14-14)
- Setting Secret Mail (☞P.12-11)

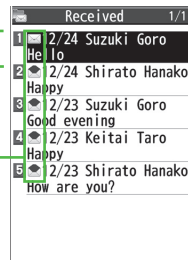
Settings

- Change Ringtone
- Change Ringer Volume
- Set Message Ringtone Duration
- Set Vibration Alert (☞P.18-2)
- Set Notification Light by Incoming Type (Voice/Video Calls or Messages) (☞P.18-10)

Window Description

Messaging Folder Contents

Received Date & Time¹,
Sender² and S! Mail Subject
(For SMS, Message Text)




















- For Sent/Unsent box, following appear:

¹ Sent date/time

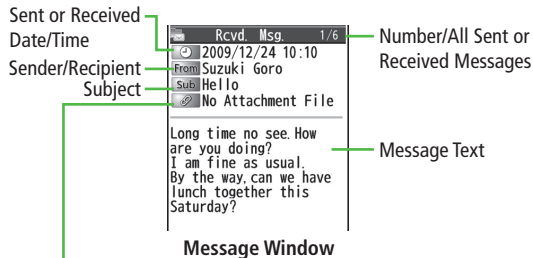
² Recipient

**Example: Received Folder
in Incoming Mail**

Message Type/Status

Message Type	Message Status
 /  Unread/Read S! Mail	 Attachments
 /  Unread/Read S! Mail Notice	 (Silver) Protected
 /  Unread/Read SMS	 Forwarded Message
 /  Unread/Read USIM Card SMS	 Replied Message
 Server Mail	 Sending failed (Sent/Unsent Message)
	 New Delivery Report (Sent/Unsent Message)
	 High Priority
	 Low Priority

Message Contents



Number of Attachments

The number of files (images, sounds, videos, text, etc.) appears.

Note

- Status indicators for forwarded/replied SMS messages (saved in USIM Card) do not appear.
- After retrieving complete messages, S! Mail Notice icons with (Forwarded) or (Replied) change to / (S! Mail).
- Messages remain protected after complete messages are retrieved via protected S! Mail Notices.
- If messages on microSD Card do not appear correctly, copy messages to handset (P.10-19) and execute **Charset Conversion** (P.14-22).

Tip

- Functions Available from Message Lists (P.14-20)
- Functions Available in Received/Sent Message Window (P.14-22)
- Settings** ● Change Font Size (P.18-20)

Retrieving Complete S! Mail

The complete message may not be downloaded during handset operations. Center sends initial portion of message as an S! Mail Notice. Manually retrieve the complete message.

- 1 At the end of message text, highlight **Continue**






Retrieve from Message List

> In received message list, [Menu] → **Retrieve** → **This one**

Retrieve Multiple Messages


> In received message list, [Menu] → **Retrieve** → **Selected** → Check messages → [Finish] → **YES**

Opening & Saving Attachments

- 1 In Message window,
[Menu] → **Attached files**
- 2 Select a file
File plays or shows.
- 3 After viewing, 
Attached files window returns.
- 4 To save the file, highlight file →
[Save] → **YES** →
Select a folder



Note

- When messages are opened, attached image files appear/play automatically.
-  (Silver) appears with file requiring a Content Key. If Content Key has expired, warning appears when opening a file. Acquire new Content Key (↗P.10-5).
- Incompatible files are saved to Other Documents in Data Folder. Some files may not be saved to handset.

File Formats Supported by Auto Playback

- Image files (JPEG, GIF, PNG)
- Music files (SMAF, AMR, SMF, SP-MIDI)

Tip

- Settings** ● Play Attached Music Files Automatically (↗P.18-21)


Showing Sent/Received Mail Address


1 Sent Address

Press and hold 

Received Address



Press and hold 

 **SMS** : SMS (successfully sent)

 **MAIL** : S! Mail (successfully sent)

- To show Redial/Incoming Call Logs: [Change]

2 To view entry details, select an entry

- To send S! Mail/SMS to recipient shown:  → Mail composition operation (S! Mail: ↗From Step 4 on P.14-4 or SMS: ↗From Step 4 on P.14-7)
- To save to Phone Book: [Store] → Operation for saving to Phone Book (↗From Step 2 on P.4-5)


Tip

- Sent/Received Address (↗P.14-19)

Using Server Mail

Retrieve mail list stored at the Center to view Server Mail.

Viewing Server Mail

1  → *Server Mail*

2 *Retrieve Mail List* → **YES**

■ **Update Server Mail List**

> After Step1, *Retrieve Mail List* →  [Update] → **YES**

Retrieving Server Mail


1  → *Server Mail* → *Retrieve Mail List*

● If no Server Mail is in the list, **YES** → **OK**

2 **Retrieve a New Message**

Select S! Mail

Retrieve Multiple Messages

 [Menu] → *Retrieve* → *Retrieve Selected* →

Check messages →  [Finish] → **YES**

■ **Retrieve All Messages**

>  → *Server Mail* → *Retrieve All*

Tip

● Mail Security (☞P.12-12) ● Server Mail Functions (☞Below)

Retrieving/Viewing Messages

Manually Retrieving New Messages

Retrieve S! Mail messages saved on Server while handset is off/out-of-range.

>  → *Retrieve New*

Server Mail functions

From  **Server Mail**

■ **Delete Server Mail**

> *Retrieve Mail List* → (Highlight Server Mail →)  [Menu] →
Del Server Mail → *Delete This* or *Delete Selected* (→ For
Delete This, check messages →  [Finish]) → **YES**

■ **Delete All Server Mail**

> *Delete All* → Enter Phone Password → **YES**

■ Forward Server Mail

- > **Retrieve Mail List** → Highlight an S! Mail → [Menu] → **Fwd Server Mail** → Select Address field → Search/enter address → Select an address or enter directly → [Send]
- To forward Server Mail from S! Mail Notice: Highlight S! Mail Notice (from Message list) → [Menu] → **Forward** → **Fwd Server Mail** → <Add Address> → Select/enter an address → [Send]
 - Forwarded S! Mail cannot be deleted from Server Mail List.
 - [Icon] appears for Server Mail saved to Drafts or Sent/Unsent after forwarded.

■ Sort Server Mail

- > **Retrieve Mail List** → [Menu] → **Sort** → Select a condition

■ View Server Mail Information

- > **Retrieve Mail List** → Highlight a message → [Menu] → **Mail Information**

■ View Server Mail Memory

- > **Server Mail Memory**

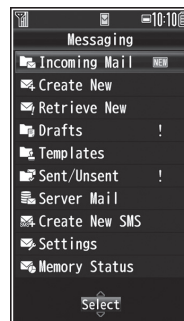
Organizing/Using Messages

Checking Messages in Messaging Folders

- At time of purchase, information message is provided for your convenience (Transmission fee does not apply).

1 [Icon] → **Incoming Mail, Drafts, Sent/Unsent**

- [NEW] appears for unread messages in Incoming Mail folder.
[Icon] appears for draft or unsent messages in Drafts or Sent/Unsent folder.
- In Incoming Mail or Sent/Unsent folder, select a folder then message.
- Messaging Folders: [Icon] P.14-3



2 Select a message

- To toggle previous/next messages in Received/Sent Message window: [Icon]

Tip

- Functions Available in Incoming Mail or Sent/Unsent Folder
- Functions Available from Message Lists [Icon] P.14-20

Auto-sort

Save messages that satisfy set conditions to designated folder automatically.

- Previously sent/received messages are not sorted.
- Sent/received messages are sorted by subject if both address and subject match sort condition applied to specific folder. Messages with no subject are sorted by address.
- Either address or mail subject can be specified per folder.


1  → **Incoming Mail** or **Sent/Unsent**

2 Highlight a folder → [Menu] → **Auto-sort Setting**

3 [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add Address	Sort messages by address > Search/enter address → Select/enter an address ● Save up to 10 addresses per folder.
Add Subject	Sort messages by mail subject > Enter a subject ● Save one subject per folder. ● SMS cannot be sorted by mail subject.
Add Group	Sort messages by Group in Phone Book > Select a group ● Save up to 10 groups per folder.
Add Mail group	Sort messages by Mail Group > Select a Mail Group ● Save up to 10 Mail Groups per folder.

Edit Sort Conditions


> After Step 2, highlight an item → [Edit] → Edit address, subject or Mail Group

Change Auto-sort List View



Switch Name view or Address view for Auto-sort.

> After Step 2, [Menu] → **Display the List** → **Name** or **Address**

Delete Auto-sort Settings

> After Step 2, (highlight an item →) [Menu] → **Delete** or **Delete All**
 (→ For **Delete All**, enter Phone Password) → **YES**

Re-sort Set Folders

> To re-sort messages in a specific folder: In Step 2, highlight a folder → [Menu] → **Re-sort in This** → **YES**
 > To re-sort messages in all folders: After Step 1 → [Menu] → **Sort in All** → **YES**

Filter Spam


Sort messages from unknown senders into Spam Folder without incoming notification. Use Safe List to receive messages from certain addresses/phone numbers and domains.

Note

- Messages from secret Phone Book entries may be sorted into Spam Folder. Be careful when deleting messages from Spam Folder.



Setting Spam Folder

<Default> OFF

- 1  → **Settings** → **Universal Settings** → **Anti-Spam Measures**
- 2 **Spam Filter** → Enter Phone Password
- 3 **ON** → **YES**

Safe List

- Specify up to 20 addresses and domains (for example, @softbank.ne.jp) to receive messages from without sorting into Spam Folder.

- 1  → **Settings** → **Universal Settings** → **Anti-Spam Measures** → **Safe List**
- 2 **Add Addresses**
 [Menu] → **Add Address** → **Received Address** or **Direct Entry** → Select or enter an address

Add Domains


-  [Menu] → **Add Domain** → Enter a domain

- 3  [Finish]

Edit Saved Addresses

- > After Step 1, highlight an address →  [Edit] → Edit address


Delete Addresses

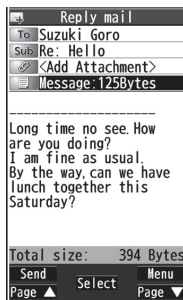
- > After Step 1, (highlight an address →)  [Menu] → **Delete** or **Delete All** (→ For **Delete All**, enter Phone Password) → **YES**

Tip

- Report Spam ( P.14-23)


Replying to Messages

- In Message window,  [Reply]
 - **Re:** appears before Subject when replying to S! Mail. Received message text is quoted.



- Complete message →  [Send]

Reply without Quoting

> In Step 1,  [Menu] → **Reply** → **Reply to Sender** or **Reply to All** → **Compose S! Mail** or **Compose SMS**

- Selectable items differ by mail type.

Note

- Alternatively, reply from Message List window without opening messages (P.14-20)

Tip

- Quote Original Message in Reply (P.18-20)


Using Mail Groups

Save mail addresses by group. Messages can be sent to specified group of recipients.


- Save up to 20 recipients per group.
- Create up to 20 groups.

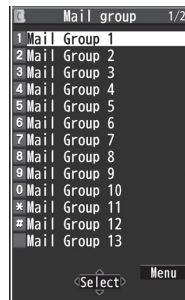
Creating Mail Groups

Main Menu ► Phone ► Settings ► Mail Group

- Select a group to save
- Enter Mail Address Directly
Highlight <Not stored> →
 [Edit] → Enter mail address

Select Mail Address from Phone Book or Sent/Received Address Logs

- Highlight <Not stored> →
 [Menu] → **Look-up address**
→ Select an item → Select an entry
● Repeat Step 2 to save mail addresses.



Mail Group List

Change Group Names

- > In Step 1, highlight a Mail Group →  [Menu] → **Edit group name** → Edit name

Reset Group Names

- > In Step 1, highlight a Mail Group →  [Menu] → **Reset group name** → **YES**




Edit Mail Addresses

- > After Step 1, highlight a mail address →  [Edit] → Edit





Delete Saved Mail Addresses






- > After Step 1, (highlight a mail address →)  [Menu] → **Delete this** or **Delete all** (→ For **Delete all**, enter Phone Password) → **YES**

Send a Message to All Group Members

- > In Step 1, highlight a Mail Group →  []
- To select a Mail Group from S! Mail Composition window:  P.14-8

Sent/Received Address

- > Sent address logs: Press and hold  → Highlight an address →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)
- > Received address logs: Press and hold  → Highlight an address →  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Character size	Toggle character size
Add to Phone Book	Save selected mail address/number to Phone Book ( From Step 2 on P.4-5)
Add shortcut icon	Create a shortcut ( P.1-23) Select a shortcut in Standby to open Composition window with selected mail address/number in Address field
Compose S! Mail	Create S! Mail to selected address/phone number ( From Step 4 on P.14-4)
Compose SMS	Create SMS to selected phone number ( From Step 4 on P.14-7)
Dialing	> Select a dialing method → Dial
Dialed calls¹	Show Redial logs
Received calls²	Show Incoming Call Logs
Delete this	> YES
Delete selected	> Check logs to be deleted →  [Finish] → YES
Delete all	> Enter Phone Password → YES

¹ Sent address logs only

² Received address logs only

Organizing Messages

■ Functions Available in Incoming Mail or Sent/Unsent Folder

- > → **Incoming Mail** or **Sent/Unsent** → (Highlight a folder) →
 [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Add folder	Add up to 10 user folders to each of Incoming Mail and Sent/Unsent folders > Enter folder name
Edit folder name*	> Edit folder name
Auto-sort Setting*	> Sort messages (From Step 3 on P.14-16)
Re-sort in This	Re-sort messages in selected folder > YES
Sort in All	Re-sort messages in all folders > YES
Sort folder*	Sort user folders > Select a target location
Mail Security	Set to require Phone Password for opening a folder > Enter Phone Password ● To cancel: repeat the step
Delete folder*	> Enter Phone Password → YES

* ユーザーフォルダ only

■ Functions Available from Message Lists

- > → **Incoming Mail**, **Drafts** or **Sent/Unsent** (→ Select a folder) →
 Highlight a message → [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Edit^{1 2}	Edit message to send (S! Mail: From Step 2 on P.14-4/SMS: From Step 2 on P.14-7)
Send²	Send Drafts
Retrieve³	Retrieve complete S! Mail > This one or Selected (→ For Selected , check messages → [Finish] → YES)
Reply³	Reply without quoting message > Reply to Sender or Reply to All → Compose S! Mail or Compose SMS → Compose a message (S! Mail: From Step 4 on P.14-4/SMS: From Step 4 on P.14-7) ● Selectable items differ by mail type.
Reply with Quote³	Quote received message to reply > Reply to Sender or Reply to All → Compose S! Mail or Compose SMS → Compose a message (S! Mail: From Step 4 on P.14-4/SMS: From Step 4 on P.14-7) ● Selectable items differ by mail type.

Item	Operation/Description
Forward ³	<p>> Forward or Fwd Server Mail → Select Address field → Search/enter address → Select an address or enter directly → [Send]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Forward Server Mail (☞P.14-15) ● When forwarding S! Mail, Fw: appears before Subject. Dotted line appears in the first line of Text field. ● Attachments are also forwarded (Messages with copy protected attachments may not be forwardable.).
Dial	> Select an item → Make a call/compose a message/add to Phone Book
Add Address ^{1 3}	<p>Save addresses to Phone Book</p> <p>> Select phone number or mail address → YES (☞From Step 2 on P.4-5)</p>
Protect/Unprotect ^{1 3}	<p>Protect received/sent messages</p> <p>> This one or Selected (→ For Selected, check messages → [Finish])</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● To unprotect, repeat the step. ● SMS saved in USIM Card cannot be deleted.
Unread/Read ³	Switch status to Unread/Read
Move ^{1 3}	<p>Move messages to specific folders</p> <p>> Move This or Move Selected (→ For Move Selected, check messages → [Finish] → YES) → Select a folder</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● SMS saved in USIM Card cannot be moved.
Delete	<p>> Select an item → Operate selected item</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If messages are received while selecting multiple messages, message deletion may fail.
Confirm Delivery ¹	View Delivery report
Send Ir data	(☞P.11-3)

Item	Operation/Description
IC Transmission	(☞P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy messages to microSD Card > YES
Copy to USIM/ Copy to Phone ³	Copy SMS to USIM Card/handset > YES
Move to USIM/Move to Phone ³	Move SMS to USIM Card/handset > YES
Sort	<p>Change display order</p> <p>> Select a display order</p>
Mail Information	View detailed information (Subject, From, To, etc.)
Mail history ^{1 3}	<p>Show up to 1000 sent/received mail records</p> <p>> Select a sender/recipient address</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● or appears. ● Select a record to show Message window. (☞P.11-3) to return to previous window.

¹ Sent messages only









² Drafts only






³ Received messages only

Using Messages

■ Functions Available in Received/Sent Message Window

> In Message window,  [Menu] → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Retrieve¹	Retrieve complete S! Mail
Edit²	Edit message to send (S! Mail:  From Step 2 on P.14-4/SMS:  From Step 2 on P.14-7)
Reply¹	Reply without quoting message > Reply to Sender or Reply to All → Compose S! Mail or Compose SMS → Compose a message (S! Mail:  From Step 4 on P.14-4/SMS:  From Step 4 on P.14-7) ● Selectable items differ by mail type.
Reply with Quote¹	Quote received message to reply > Reply to Sender or Reply to All → Compose S! Mail or Compose SMS → Compose a message (S! Mail:  From Step 4 on P.14-4/SMS:  From Step 4 on P.14-7) ● Selectable items differ by mail type.
Forward¹	> Forward or Fwd Server Mail ● Forward Server Mail ( P.14-15)
Dial	> Select an item → Make a call/compose a message/add to Phone Book
Add Address	Save addresses to Phone Book > Select phone number or mail address → YES ( From Step 2 on P.4-5)

Item	Operation/Description
Add to Phone Book	Save highlighted phone number/mail address to Phone Book > YES ( From Step 2 on P.4-5)
Attached files	Show attached files
Save Templates	Save edited templates > YES
Add Shortcut Icon	Create a shortcut ( P.1-23) Select a shortcut in Standby to open Composition window with selected mail address/number in Address field
Copy	Copy address, subject or text Select an item → Copy ( After Step 2 on P.3-10)
Font Size	> Select a size
Scroll Unit	Change scroll unit > Select an item
Charset Conversion¹	Convert characters when not properly shown > Select an item
Delete	> Select an item → Operate selected item
Confirm Delivery²	View Delivery report
Mail Information	View detailed information (Subject, From, To, etc.)
Send Ir data	( P.11-3)
IC Transmission	( P.11-5)
Copy to microSD	Copy messages to microSD Card > YES
Copy to USIM or Copy to Phone¹	Copy SMS to USIM Card/handset > YES

Item	Operation/Description
Move to USIM or Move to Phone¹	Move SMS to USIM Card/handset > YES
Report Spam¹	Report received mail as Spam > [Send] ● Change destination to report to (P.18-20).
Mail history	Show up to 1000 sent/received mail records > Select a sender/recipient address ● or appears. ● Select a record to show Message window. to return to previous window.

¹ Received Message window only

² Sent Message window only

Getting Started	15-2
Using Yahoo! Keitai	15-3
Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu	15-3
Entering URL	15-4
Using Access Histories	15-4
Exiting Mobile Internet	15-4
Using PC Site Browser	15-5
Opening Menu	15-5
Entering URL	15-5
Using Access Histories	15-5
Exiting Internet	15-5
Basic Operations.....	15-6
Using Cursor	15-6
Text Entry & Item Selection	15-7
Using Information	15-8
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	15-8
Managing Bookmarks & Saved Pages	15-9
Bookmarks/Saved Pages Functions.....	15-10
Downloading Image/Sound Files	15-11
Using Number, Address or URL.....	15-11
Streaming	15-12
Option Menu Items.....	15-13

Getting Started

Access Yahoo! Keitai Mobile Internet and PC sites.

"Yahoo! Keitai" is both a SoftBank Mobile Internet service and the SoftBank Mobile Internet portal.

View PC Internet websites via PC Site Browser.

Internet

Yahoo! Keitai

- View Mobile Internet Websites (☞P.15-3)
- Download image/sound files, etc. (☞P.15-11)
- Movies/Music Streaming (☞P.15-12)
- Register S! Quick News (☞P.8-4)

PC Sites

- View PC Sites (☞P.15-5)
- Download still images (☞P.15-11)

Note

- Separate subscription is required for Network access.
- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).
- Video Calls cannot be received while connecting to the Network.

Cache Memory

Retrieved information is temporarily saved in Cache Memory.

When full, oldest is deleted first.

- Previously viewed pages may load from Cache Memory. To view the latest, update information (☞P.15-13).
- Cached items with expiry dates are deleted upon expiry.
- Information remains even after handset is disconnected from the Network or handset power is turned off.

Tip

Settings

- Clear Cache ● Delete Cookies (☞P.18-23)
- Initialize Browser (☞P.18-24)

SSL/TLS

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information such as credit card numbers.

Server certificates are saved on handset (P.18-23).

Notes

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL and TLS.

Tip

Settings

- Security Settings (P.18-23)

Using Yahoo! Keitai

Opening Yahoo! Keitai Menu

Select Yahoo! Keitai Menu items to access websites.

Main Menu ► Yahoo!

1 Open Top Menu *Yahoo! Keitai*

2 Open Menu List *Menu List*

Select a menu item

- Repeat Step 2 as required.
- Basic Operations: P.15-6

Note

- Shortcut: In Standby, press 

Entering URL

Enter URLs (addresses beginning with "http://" or "https://") directly to access websites, or open previously viewed pages using URL histories.

- Up to 20 URL histories are stored.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Enter URL

- Enter URL Directly
Direct Entry → Enter URL

Use URL History

URL History List →

Select a URL



URL History List Window

Delete URL Histories

- > In Step 1, **URL History List** → (Highlight a URL →) [X] [Menu] → **Delete** or **Delete All** → YES

Using Access Histories

Open previously viewed pages using access histories.

- Up to 100 access histories are stored (The number of savable histories varies depending on data amount.).

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► History

- Select a history



History Window

Delete Access Histories

- > In Step 1, (highlight a history →) [X] [Menu] → **Delete** or **Delete All** → YES (→ For **Delete All**, enter Phone Password)

Show Access History URLs

- > In Step 1, highlight a history → [X] [Menu] → **Display URL**

Exiting Mobile Internet

- [End Call] → YES


Note

- Closing handset does not affect active browser.

Using PC Site Browser

Opening Menu

View PC websites using PC Site Browser.

- When PC Site Browser is active,  appears.
- Some pages may not be viewable.
- Viewing PC websites may incur high charges.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► PC Site Browser

1 Homepage



Confirmation appears. Select **NO**.

- To show confirmation each time: **YES**

2 Select a menu item

Repeat Step 2 as required.

Note

- Alternatively, press  in Yahoo! Keitai Menu to switch to PC Site Browser Menu. To return to Yahoo! Keitai Menu, press  again.

Tip



Settings

- Hide Warning Messages when Activating PC Site Browser or Switching to Yahoo! Keitai (P.18-22)

Entering URL

Follow same operation accessed from Yahoo! Keitai.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► PC Site Browser ► Enter URL

- Follow Step 1 of same operation accessed from Yahoo! Keitai (P.15-4).

Using Access Histories

Follow same operation accessed from Yahoo! Keitai.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► PC Site Browser ► History

- Follow Step 1 of same operation accessed from Yahoo! Keitai (P.15-4).

Exiting Internet

1 → YES

Note

- Closing handset does not affect active browser.

Basic Operations

Using Cursor

- Operation descriptions are based on Portrait View.

Move Cursor	<p>Use cursor to select underlined menu items.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ to move right ○ to move left ○ to move to previous line ○ to move to next line
Scroll Pages	<p>Scroll bar appears on right side or at bottom of Display when page content continues beyond view.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ scroll up/down ○ scroll left/right Ⓜ scroll page up by a screenful Ⓜ scroll page down by a screenful ● To scroll continuously, press and hold above keys.
Move to previous page/next page	<p>Previously viewed pages are temporarily saved in Cache Memory (P.15-2).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ⓜ [Back]: Return to previous page Ⓜ [Menu] → Forward: View next page ● Some web pages may not appear after performing the steps above.

When Authentication is Required

Some pages require user authentication for access.

If required, enter user ID or password.

Note

- While page is open, press and hold  to switch to TV.

Tip

Settings

- Font Size ● Scroll Unit ● Images Off ● Sound Off (P.18-22)
- Delete User ID or Password Entered when Authentication is Required (P.18-23)

Text Entry & Item Selection

Enter text or select items to send information.

Example:

The screenshot shows a web form with the following elements and labels:

- Text Entry Field:** Points to the "お名前" (Name) input field.
- Radio Button:** Points to the "性別" (Gender) section, specifically the "男" (Male) option.
- Menu List:** Points to the "お住まい" (Residence) dropdown menu.
- Check Box:** Points to the "資料請求" (Request for materials) checkbox.
- Command Button:** Points to the "送信" (Send) button.

● Actual web pages may differ in appearance.

Text Entry Field	Highlight field → → Enter text →
Menu List	Highlight field → Menu list appears. Highlight an item → Selected items are highlighted.
Radio Button	Highlight → When selected, appears.
Check Box	Highlight <input type="checkbox"/> → When selected, <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> appears. Press again to cancel selection.
Command Button	Highlight the button → Corresponding command is executed.

Using Information

Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Bookmark websites or save page content to Saved Pages.

- Some copy protected materials cannot be saved.

Bookmarks	Save links to websites. Handset connects to the Network to open the link.
Saved Pages	Save page content. Handset opens saved pages without connecting to the Network.

Saving Web Pages

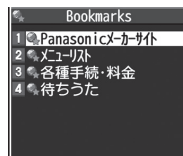
- 1 Open a web page →  [Menu] → **Bookmarks** or **Saved Pages** → **Add**
- 2 Select title → Edit title
- 3 **OK** → **OK**

Viewing Bookmarks & Saved Pages

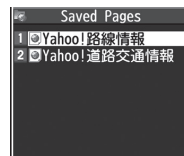
Main Menu ► Yahoo! (► PC Site Browser)

- 1 **Bookmarks** or **Saved Pages** → Select an item

Example: Yahoo! Keitai Browser




Bookmarks List Window



Saved Pages List Window

Open Bookmarks/Saved Pages in Web Page

- > Open a web page →  [Menu] → **Bookmarks** or **Saved Pages** → **View List**

Note

- Create folders in Bookmarks/Saved Pages List to organize Bookmarks/Saved Pages (☞P.15-9).

Tip

- Send Bookmarks via Infrared (☞P.11-3) ● Send Bookmarks via IC Transmission (☞P.11-5)
- Add Bookmark Shortcuts to Standby ● Save URLs to Bookmarks
- Send Bookmark URLs (☞P.15-10)

Managing Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Follow the steps below to open Bookmarks or Saved Pages list:

■ Yahoo! Keitai

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Bookmarks or Saved Pages

■ PC Site Browser

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► PC Site Browser
► Bookmarks or Saved Pages

Note

- When a different USIM Card is inserted, Saved Pages do not appear or title name cannot be changed.

Creating New Bookmarks/Saved Pages Folders

- Folders cannot be created within existing folders.

1 Bookmarks

In Bookmarks list window, [Y] [Menu] → **Create New** → **Folders** → Enter title

Saved Pages

In Saved Pages list window, [Y] [Menu] → **New Folder** → Enter title

■ Move Bookmarks/Saved Pages to Folder

- ① Before moving to folders, set **Sort** to **Saved/Used Order** or **Saved/Moved Order** (☞P.15-10)
- ② In Bookmarks/Saved Pages list window (☞P.15-8), highlight a bookmark/saved page → [Y] [Menu] → **Move to** → Select a folder → Select a destination

■ Edit Folder Title

- In Bookmarks/Saved Pages list window (☞P.15-8), highlight a folder → [Y] [Menu] → **Edit** → Edit folder title

Editing Bookmark Titles/URLs

- 1 In Bookmarks list window, highlight a bookmark → [Y] [Menu] → **Edit**
- 2 Edit title/URL

Renaming Saved Pages

- 1 In Saved Pages list window, highlight a saved page → [Y] [Menu] → **Edit**
- 2 Edit title

Tip

- Delete Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Folders
- Display Bookmark/Saved Page URLs
- Change Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Folders Display Order
- Sort Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Folders (☞P.15-10)

Bookmarks/Saved Pages Functions

From ► **Main Menu ► Yahoo! (► PC Site Browser)**
► **Bookmarks or Saved Pages**

■ Add Bookmark Shortcuts to Standby





> Highlight a bookmark → [Menu] → **Add shortcut icon** → **YES**

■ Save URLs to Bookmarks

> [Menu] → **Create New** → **Bookmarks** → Enter a title/URL → **OK**

■ Delete Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Folders

> Follow the steps below

Item	Operation/Description
Delete	> Highlight a bookmark, saved page or folder →  [Menu] → Delete → YES
Delete Selected Items	Select items to delete >  [Menu] → Delete selected → Check items to delete →  [Delete] → YES
Delete All	>  [Menu] → Delete All → YES → Enter Phone Password

■ Display Bookmark/Saved Page URLs

> Highlight a bookmark/saved page → [Menu] → **Display URL**

■ Change Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Folders Display Order



> Highlight a bookmark/saved page/folder → [Menu] → **Move to** →
 to select a position

- Before changing order, set **Sort** (Right) to **Saved/Used Order** or **Saved/Moved Order**.

■ Sort Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Folders

> [Menu] → **Sort** → Select a condition


■ Send Bookmark URLs

> Highlight a bookmark → [Menu] → **Send URL** → **S! Mail** or
SMS → Create a message (S! Mail: From Step 2 on P.14-4/SMS:
From Step 2 on P.14-7)

Downloading Image/Sound Files

Save images, sounds, etc. to Data Folder or microSD Card.

- For PC Site Browser, only still images can be saved.

1 Open a web page →  [Menu] → **Select File**

2 Select a file

File details appear.

3 **Save → YES**

Available menu items vary by saved content.

- Save location is determined by **Save Settings** (☞P.18-23).

However, save location may change depending on situations. Check confirmation when download is complete.

Note

- Do not remove/install microSD Card while saving files to it.
- Do not turn handset power off while downloading or saving files. Files may be damaged.
- Some copy protected files may not be saved.
- Videos selected from web pages play while being downloaded.

Using Number, Address or URL

Use linked numbers, addresses or URLs to make calls, send messages, access websites, or save directly to Phone Book.

1 Open a web page containing phone numbers, mail addresses or URLs

2 **Phone Number**

Select a phone number → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Voice call	Make a Voice Call
Video call	Make a Video Call
Select image	Select outgoing image
Add to Phone Book	Save a number to Phone Book (☞From Step 2 on P.4-5)

E-mail Address

Select an address → Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Compose S! Mail	Create S! Mail (☞From Step 4 on P.14-4)
Compose SMS	Create SMS (☞From Step 4 on P.14-7)
Add to Phone Book	Save mail address to Phone Book (☞From Step 2 on P.4-5)

URL

Select URL



Handset connects to the Network.

Streaming












- Supported by compatible files on Yahoo! Keitai sites only.
- Streaming files cannot be saved.

Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Yahoo! Keitai

- 1 Open a web page → Select a file
Streaming starts.

- 2  or  to exit

Engaged Streaming Operations

Mute/Release Mute	 [ / ]
Pause/Resume ¹	 [ / ]
Volume	 /  
Set Playback Position ¹	 to start playback from specified point
Toggle Display ²	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Toggle : Portrait View → Landscape View → Full-size Landscape View

¹ Not available during playback for live events such as live sports programs

² Available only when Motion Control Setting (P.18-6) is set to **OFF**

Note


- Streaming requires a continuous Network connection. Network remains connected even during a pause (Transmission fees apply).
- Paused streams may stop after three minutes of inactivity.
- When roaming abroad, streaming may be unavailable or not be performed properly.

Incoming Voice Calls while Streaming

Incoming call pauses an active stream.

- Video Calls cannot be received while streaming.

Option Menu Items

In Yahoo! Keitai, press  [Menu] for these options:

- Some functions may not be available depending on web pages.

Item	Operation/Description
Forward	Go to next page (P.15-6)
Bookmarks	View Bookmarks list, add bookmarks, or add bookmark shortcuts to Standby
Saved Pages	View Saved Pages list or save page content to Saved Pages
Text Copy	Copy page text
Reload Page	Refresh page information
Enter URL	Enter URL directly or use URL History to access pages
Select File	View, play or save file to Data Folder (Downloading Image/Sound Files: From Step 2 on P.15-11)

Item	Operation/Description
Handy Functions	<p>Switch PC Browser¹/Switch Browser²: Toggle Yahoo! Keitai/PC site</p> <p>CHG wide scr. mode/RLS wide scr. mode³: Toggle wide screen mode on/off according to handset orientation</p> <p>Internet Search: Search text in Internet</p> <p>Search In Page: Search text within page</p> <p>Jump in this page: Jump to top/end of page</p> <p>Send URL: Send URL via S! Mail/SMS</p> <p>History: Open previously viewed pages</p> <p>Expand/Shrink²: Zoom page in/out</p> <p>Set Display Range²: Specify displayed area of page</p> <p>Flash(R) Menu: Playback/pause Flash® files</p> <p>Properties: View page details or server certificates for secure pages</p>
Yahoo! Keitai/ Home Page²	View top menu
Settings	<p>Font Size: Change font size</p> <p>Encoding: Change encoding type</p> <p>Pointer: Set Pointer²</p>
Switch screen²	Toggle between Small Screen and PC Screen
Exit Browser	Exit Browser

¹ Yahoo! Keitai only

² PC Site Browser only

³ Available only when Motion Control Setting (P.18-6) is **OFF** for Yahoo! Keitai or PC Site Browser

S! Appli

Before Using S! Appli	16-2
Downloading S! Appli.....	16-2
Using S! Appli	16-3
Activating S! Appli.....	16-3
Terminate/Suspend & Resume.....	16-3
Using S! Appli Startup History.....	16-3
Managing Applications	16-4

Before Using S! Appli

S! Appli are Java™-based applications designed to run on SoftBank handsets. Download games and other real-time applications for use on handset.

- Separate subscription required to use downloaded applications (not required for pre-installed S! Appli).
- For usage on pre-installed applications, see Help menu for each S! Appli.

Note

- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Network S! Appli

Network S! Appli requires Network connection.

- Connection fees apply.

License Information

> Main Menu ► S! Appli ► Information

Downloading S! Appli

Download up to 100 S! Appli files to handset/microSD Card.

- End suspended S! Appli if any. However, S! Appli may not be ended during calls.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

1 Download S! Appli → YES

Handset connects to the Network, and download site appears.

2 Select an S! Appli

Properties appear.

3 Follow onscreen instructions

4 Select a save location

Downloaded S! Appli is saved to Data Folder automatically.

- Download may take some time.

5 YES to activate

Downloaded S! Appli starts.

- To exit: **NO**

Download Lifestyle-Appli

> Main Menu ► Tools or S! Appli ► Osaifu-Keitai

► Lifestyle-Appli ► Download ► YES ► Select a Lifestyle-Appli


- Lifestyle-Appli: P.13-9


Using S! Appli

Activating S! Appli

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

1 Select an S! Appli

Application starts and  appears.

- See application Help menu for usage information.
- Confirmation appears when selecting Network S! Appli.
- For a microSD Card S! Appli, press  [microSD] before Step 1.

Note

- Activate an S! Appli; Main Menu ► Data Folder ► S! Appli ► Select an S! Appli
- Incoming transmissions pause S! Appli.
- AV output compatible applications may be viewed on a TV set (P.11-13).

Tip

Settings

- Volume ● Backlight On/Off ● Deactivate Vibration
- Update S! Appli Information on microSD Card from Another Handset (P.18-24)

Terminate/Suspend & Resume

Terminating/Pausing S! Appli

1 While running an S! Appli,

2 *Suspended* or *Stopped*

 appears for a suspended application.

Resuming/Terminating Paused S! Appli

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

1 *Replayed* or *Stopped*

Resumed application starts from paused point.

Using S! Appli Startup History


Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli History

1 Highlight a record → [Menu] → *Start, S! Appli info* or *Delete*

Managing Applications

Moving S! Appli between Handset and microSD Card

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

- 1 Highlight an S! Appli →  [Menu] → **Move to microSD** or **Move to phone**
 - Some S! Appli may not be moved to microSD Card.

Deleting S! Appli

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

- 1 Highlight an S! Appli →  [Menu] → **Delete** → **YES**
 - Some pre-installed S! Appli may not be deleted.

Viewing S! Appli Properties

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

- 1 Highlight an S! Appli →  [Menu] → **S! Appli info**

Setting Security Level while Running S! Appli

- Security Level cannot be set for some applications.

Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli List

- 1 Highlight an S! Appli →  [Menu] → **Security level**
- 2 Select an item (See below)

Item	Operation/Description
Network Access	Connect to the Network
Auto Invocation	Activate S! Appli
Multimedia Recording	Activate Camera
Data Reading Access	Read data in Data Folder
Data Rewrtng Accss	Write/delete data in Data Folder
Location Access	Retrieve Location information

- 3 **Always Allowed, Ask First Time***, **Ask Every Time** or **Not Allowed**

* Confirmation appears the first time application is activated.

Reset Security Level Settings

Reset security level settings to default or condition when downloading.

> In Step 2, **Reset Sec. Setting** → **YES**

S! GPS Navi

About S! GPS Navi.....	17-2
Using S! GPS Navi.....	17-2
Checking Your Current Position	17-2
Activating Navi Appli	17-3
Using Location Navi (Japanese).....	17-3
Using Location Log.....	17-3

About S! GPS Navi

S! GPS Navi provides location information by communicating with base stations and by GPS satellite. Check your position on map, area information or route to your destination using a Navi Appli.

Note

- Location information may be inaccurate due to location or signal conditions.
- SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Position cannot be determined while Positioning Lock is active (☞P.18-25).
- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Using S! GPS Navi


Checking Your Current Position

Activate Navi Appli to check your position.

Main Menu ► Tools ► S! GPS Navi

1 *Current Location* → YES

Positioning starts.

- To check your current position during positioning: When [Use] appears at lower right,  → OK

2 When positioning is complete, [Map] → YES

Handset connects to the Network and web page opens.

- To reposition:  [Retry]

■ Save to Phone Book


Save obtained location information to Phone Book.

- > Positioning is complete →  [Menu] → *Add to Phone Book* → YES
→ Follow the steps for saving to Phone Book (☞From Step 2 on P.4-5)

Indicating Positioning Accuracy Level

Accuracy Level  ... Fairly accurate

Accuracy Level  ... Relatively accurate

Accuracy Level  ... No accurate location information retrieved
Retrieve location information again.

Activating Navi Appli

Search for current area information or route to your destination.

- End all applications including suspended applications.

Main Menu ► Tools ► S! GPS Navi ► Navi Appli

Using Location Navi (Japanese)

Use Location Navi to locate a person via a SoftBank 3G handset or PC.

For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Main Menu ► Tools ► S! GPS Navi ► Location Navi

Note

- Event Indicator appears when location information is automatically provided or location information request is rejected. Select indicator to show location log.

Using Location Log

Up to 50 latest location info are saved. Delete as required.

Main Menu ► Tools ► S! GPS Navi ► Location Logs

1 Show Details

Select a record to view details

- ☒ appears if positioning fails.

Delete a Record

Highlight a record → ☒[Menu] → *Delete* → *Delete this* → *YES*

Delete All

☒[Menu] → *Delete* → *Delete all* → Enter Phone Password → *YES*

Note

- When 50 records are saved, oldest is deleted first.
- When positioning is requested while viewing a record, a message appears and log window returns.

Tip

Settings ● S! GPS Navi Settings (P.18-25)

Settings









Sound & Vibration	18-2
Ringtones.....	18-2
Charge Sound/Key Tone	18-3
Display.....	18-3
Display Settings.....	18-3
Main Menu	18-4
Clock	18-5
Back Light.....	18-5
Font	18-6
Motion Control Setting	18-6
Speed Selector Setting.....	18-6
Manner Mode	18-7
Incoming Settings.....	18-7
Date & Time	18-8
Call Settings	18-9
Call Time & Call Cost	18-9
Making & Receiving Calls	18-9
Notification Light	18-10
Text Entry.....	18-11
Text Entry Method	18-11
Conversion.....	18-11
Conversion during Message Text Entry	18-12
Phone Book	18-12
Voice Dial.....	18-12

Video Call	18-13
Function Menus.....	18-13
Engaged Video Call Settings	18-13
Digital TV	18-14
Camera	18-15
Camera Settings (Camera Mode/Action Mode)	18-15
Video Camera Settings (Video Camera Mode)	18-17
Mobile Widget (Japanese)	18-18
S! Quick News (Japanese)	18-18
Display Settings.....	18-18
Auto Update/Deleting Information	18-19
Bluetooth®	18-19
Messaging	18-20
Universal Settings.....	18-20
S! Mail Settings.....	18-21
SMS Settings	18-22
Internet.....	18-22
Browser Display Settings.....	18-22
Memory Manager & Reset	18-23
Security Settings	18-23
Reset.....	18-24
S! Appli.....	18-24
Osafu-Keitai®	18-24
S! GPS Navi Settings	18-25
Default Settings	18-26
Confirming Settings	18-27

Settings Sound & Vibration

Ringtones

From  Main Menu  Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
Change Ringtone  <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Ring Tones</i> → Select an item → <i>Select Ring Tone</i> → Select a type → Select a folder → Select a tone	Phone/Video Call: Pattern 1 Message: Tone3
Set Machi-Uta® (Change Ringback Tone)¹  <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Machi-Uta</i> → Select an item	—
Change Ringer Volume  <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Ringer Volume</i> → Select a type →  to adjust volume	Level 4
Disable 3D Sound Effect (Ringtone/Melody)  <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Stereo/3D Sound</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON
Set Ringtone Sound Output for Earphone²  <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Earphone</i> → <i>Earphone</i>	Earphone + Speaker
Set Message Ringtone Duration  <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Message Ring Tones</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> (→ For <i>ON</i> , enter ring time)	ON (Ring time: 05 sec)
Set Vibration Alert  <i>Incoming Settings</i> → <i>Vibrator</i> → Select an item → Select a vibration pattern	OFF

¹ For more information, visit [SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website \(http://www.softbank.jp\)](http://www.softbank.jp).

² When earphone is connected and Sound Settings is set to **Earphone**, ringtone sounds through earphone and speaker for incoming calls/messages or alarms after about 20 seconds. Other sounds (e.g. Demo playback) are heard only from earphone.

Pre-installed Ringtones

Title	Composer
Pinwheel	Original
SINFONIA NR 101 THE CLOCK HOB I 101	HAYDN FRANZ JOSEPH
JE TE VEUX	SATIE ERIK ALFREDI LE
DANSE DES MIRLITONS // CASSE NOISETTE OP 71A /ORI	CHAJKOVSKIJ PETR ILICH
HEIGH HO // SNOW WHITE AND THE SEVEN DWARFS /INST	CHURCHILL FRANK E
DANCE OF THE KNIGHTS OP 64 NO 13	PROKOFEV SERGEJ S
WALTZ/COPPELIA BALLET SUITE	DELIBES LEO CLEMENT PHILIBERT
PETER AND THE WOLF OP 67	PROKOFEV SERGEJ S

Names of composers given above conform to JASRAC Website. Parts of titles may not appear due to Display size.

Charge Sound/Key Tone

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Set Key Tone > <i>Sound Settings</i> → <i>Key Tone</i> → <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i>	OFF
■ Charging Start/End Tone Off > <i>Phone Settings</i> → <i>Battery</i> → <i>Charge Sound</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON

Settings **Display**

Display Settings

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Display Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Wallpaper > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Stand-by Display</i> → Select an item (→ Select a folder) → Select an image	(P.18-26)
■ Add Calendar to Wallpaper > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Stand-by Display</i> → <i>Calendar</i> → Select a view format → <i>BG Image ON</i> or <i>BG Image OFF</i> (→ For <i>BG Image ON</i> , select a folder → select an image)	—
■ Change Wallpaper Randomly > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Stand-by Display</i> → <i>Random Display</i> → Select a folder → <i>Every Hour</i> or <i>Every Day</i>	—
■ Change Outgoing Call/Message Image > <i>Internal Display</i> → Select an outgoing type → Select a folder → Select an image	(P.18-26)
■ Change Incoming Call/Message Image > <i>Internal Display</i> → Select an incoming type → <i>Select Calling Disp.</i> ¹ → Select an image type → Select a folder → Select an image	(P.18-26)
■ Change Battery/Antenna Indicator > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Battery Icon</i> or <i>Antenna Icon</i> → Select a pattern	Pattern 1

Change Start-up Window > <i>Internal Display</i> → <i>Start-up</i> → <i>OFF</i> , <i>Message</i> , <i>Pictures</i> or <i>Videos</i> ²	—
Change Display Color Scheme > <i>Color</i> → Select a color	(☞ P.18-26)
Set Interface Language > <i>言語設定</i> → <i>日本語</i>	日本語
Show New Call/Message when Handset Opens > <i>Open for New</i> → <i>ON</i>	OFF

¹ ● Setting applies to messages retrieved manually (*Incoming Options* (☞ P.18-21) set to *Manual Retrieval*) or when Server Mail is retrieved (Retrieve New window cannot be changed).

² ● For *Pictures* or *Videos*: Select a folder → Select an image
 ● For *Message*: Enter text

Main Menu

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Settings** ► **Display Settings**
 ► **Menu Icons**

Setting/Operation	Default
Change Main Menu Theme > Select a pattern	(☞ P.18-26)
Change Main Menu Icons > <i>Customize</i> → Select a menu → Select a folder → Select an image	—
Change Main Menu Background > <i>Customize</i> → <i>Background Image</i> → Select a folder → Select an image	—

Clock

From ► **Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings**
► Internal Display ► Clock

Setting/Operation	Default
Change Standby Clock Pattern¹ > Stand-by Clock → [Pattern] → Select a pattern → [Set]	(P.18-26)
Change Standby Clock Position^{1 2} > Stand-by Clock → [Position] → Select a position → [Set]	Pattern 1
Change Standby Clock Size¹ > Stand-by Clock → [Size] → Small → [Set]	Large
Change Standby Clock at Upper Right (lower right in Landscape View) > Icon Clock → Select a pattern	(P.18-26)

¹ Highlight **Stand-by Clock** → [Play] to view Standby Clock.

² Clock appears in **Pattern 1** when:

- Calendar, World Clock or Operator Name is set to appear in Standby.
- Time zone is set to other than GMT+9.
- Privacy Key Lock is active.

Back Light

From ► **Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
Turn Back Light On/Off; Set Power Saver Mode¹ > Back Light Time → Lighting → ON or OFF → Enter time to Power Saver mode	ON + 15secs.
Illuminate Back Light while Charging > Back Light Time → Charging → Long Time Light²	Standard ³
Limit Back Light to Display Only > Back Light Time → Area → LCD	LCD + Keys
Adjust Brightness > Back Light Time → Brightness → Select a brightness level	Auto ⁴
Set Soft Light Off > Back Light Time → Soft Light → OFF	ON
Disable Auto Image Compensation > LCD AI → OFF	ON

¹ During operation (except when in Standby or S! Appli is active), press and hold [5] to toggle **ON/OFF**.

² When set to **Long Time Light**, Back Light changes to Power Saver mode in three hours.

³ When set to **Standard**, Back Light illuminates with the same setting as **Lighting** setting.

⁴ When set to **Auto**, Back Light is automatically adjusted according to ambient light.

Font

From ► **Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Font Size by Function > Font Size → Select an item → Select a size	Standard
■ Set Menu Font Sizes Collectively > Font Size → Collective Setting → Large or Small *	Standard
■ Change Font Style (Incoming/Outgoing Call Window) > Disp. Call/Recv # → Pattern 2	Pattern 1

* When **Small** is set, font size for Phone Book and Incoming/Outgoing Call Logs is **Standard**.

Motion Control Setting

From ► **Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Motion Control Setting**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Disable All Motion Control Settings > OFF	ON (Except Y! Keitai)
■ Customize Motion Control Settings per Function > Highlight Customize → [Edit] → Select a function → Select an item → [Finish]	Pictures, PC Site Browser, TV: ON Videos, PC Movies: ON(Wide Screen) Yahoo! Keitai: OFF

Settings Speed Selector Setting

From ► **Main Menu ► Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change/Disable Speed Selector Sound* > Sound Settings → Speed Selector Sound → Select a pattern or OFF	Pattern 1
■ Deactivate Speed Selector > Phone Settings → Speed Selector Setting → Speed Selector → OFF	ON
■ Change Functions Activated by Speed Selector Operation in Standby > Phone Settings → Speed Selector Setting → Rotation Setting → Clockwise or Counterclockwise → Select a function	Key Guidance

* Volume control is not available.

Settings Manner Mode

From ► **Main Menu ► Settings ► Incoming Settings ► Manner Mode Type**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Set Manner Mode Type > <i>Manner Mode, Super Silent or User Mode</i> (→ For <i>User Mode</i> , set individual items → [Finish])	Manner Mode

■ Default Settings by Mode

Manner Mode	Super Silent	Driving Mode	User Mode
Answer Phone			
Value set for Answer Phone	Value set for Answer Phone	ON	OFF
Vibrator			
ON	ON	OFF	ON
Volume (In. Calls/Msg Ring T./Alarm)			
Silent	Silent	Silent	Silent
Rec. Check Tone			
ON	OFF	ON	ON
Key Tone			
OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Selector Sound			
OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Mic Sensitiv.			
Up	Up	Up	Up
LVA Tone (Low battery alarm)			
OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF

Settings Incoming Settings

From ► **Main Menu ► Settings ► Incoming Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Answer Setting (P.18-8) > <i>Answer Setting → Quick Silent or OFF</i>	Any Key Answer
■ Answer Calls by Opening Handset > <i>Open-to-Ans. Call → Phone or Video Call → Answer</i>	Keep Ringing
■ Hide Caller Image Saved in Phone Book > <i>Phone Book Image → OFF</i>	ON
■ Activate Auto Answer with Earphone > <i>Auto Answer → ON → Enter ring time</i>	OFF
■ Set Call Waiting Response > <i>In-call Management → Call Forwarding or Call Rejection</i>	Answer

Answer Setting Key Operations

Any Key Answer	To answer a call, press any of the following keys: Voice Call: , , - , , , , , Video Call: , , , , ,
Quick Silent	To cancel ringtone/vibration, press any of the following keys: Voice Call: - , , , , , , , , , Video Call: - , , , , , , , , ,
OFF	To answer a call, press any of the following keys: Voice Call: , Video Call: , ,

- When [Voice Mail] is assigned to indicated at the bottom of Display, press to start voice or video recording.

Settings Date & Time

From Main Menu Settings Date & Time

Setting/Operation	Default
Change Date and Time* > Date & Time → Enter year, date, time and time zone	—
Display World Clock > World Clock → ON → to select an area	OFF
Activate Daylight Savings Time > Daylight Savings → ON	OFF
Deactivate Alarm while Operating Other Functions > Alarm Tone → <i>Operation Preferred</i>	Alarm Preferred
Deactivate Automatic Time Correction via Yahoo! Keitai > Time Correction → OFF	ON

* Date & Time Settings effective on handset: from 09:00 on 2000/01/01 to 23:59 on 2037/12/31 (when time zone is set to GMT+9).

Settings Call Settings

Call Time & Call Cost

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Call Settings


Setting/Operation	Default
■ Display Call Time/Cost¹ > <i>Call Time/Cost</i>	—
■ Reset Total Call Charge/Time > <i>Reset</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>Reset Total Duration</i> or <i>Reset Total Cost</i> → YES (→ For <i>Reset Total Cost</i> , enter PIN2)	—
■ Set Charge Limit² > <i>Set Max Cost Limit</i> → ON → Enter charge limit → Enter PIN2	OFF


¹ May not be available depending on subscription status. In that case, Set Max Cost Limit is not available.

² When set to **ON**, incoming/outgoing calls including emergency number calls are not dialable if charge limit is reached.

Making & Receiving Calls

From ► Main Menu ► Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Earpiece Volume > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Volume</i> →  to adjust volume	Level 4

■ Set Handset Response when Closed during Call > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Setting When Closed</i> → <i>Hold Call*</i> or <i>End the Call</i>	Continue
■ Set Hold Tone > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Hold Tones</i> → <i>On-hold Tone</i> or <i>Holding Tone</i> → Select a tone	On-hold Tone: On-hold Tone 1 Holding Tone: JESU JOY OF MAN's
■ Turn Off Noise Reduction > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Noise Reduction</i> → OFF	ON
■ Change Alarm before Connection is Disconnected > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Quality Alarm</i> → OFF or <i>Low Tone</i>	High Tone
■ Change Alarm until Line is Reconnected > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Reconnect Signal</i> → OFF or <i>Low Tone</i>	High Tone
■ Call Service Numbers (Service not available at present) > <i>Call Settings</i> → <i>Service Numbers</i> → Select a service number → 	—
■ Specify Phone Book Entry to Call with Earphone > <i>Phone Settings</i> → <i>Headset Switch to Call</i> → <i>Voice Call</i> → Search Phone Book → Select an entry	OFF

* When **Hold Call** is selected: **Speaker ON** (Hold tone sounds from speaker)/**Speaker OFF** (Hold tone does not sound from speaker)

Settings Notification Light

From  Main Menu ► Settings ► Notification Light

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Set Notification Light by Incoming Type (Voice/Video Calls or Messages) > Incoming → Select Color → Select a type → Select a color	(📖P.18-26)
■ Change Notification Light Color Name for Incoming Call/Message > Incoming → Color → Edit Color Name → Select a color → Edit color name	—
■ Adjust Notification Light Color Tone for Incoming Call/Message > Incoming → Color → Adjust Color Tone → Select a color → Adjust color tone	—
■ Set Notification Light for Missed Calls/New Messages > Missed Call/Unread → OFF When Checked or OFF	OFF after 24hours
■ Set Notification Light When Opening/Closing Handset > Slide → Slide Open or Slide Close → Select OFF or a color	(📖P.18-26)
■ Set Notification Light During Calls/Music Playback/Bluetooth® Transmission/IC Card Reading > Select a function → Select ON , OFF or a color	—

■ Set Notification Light During Speed Selector Operation > Speed Selector → Select OFF or a color	(📖P.18-26)
■ View Notification Light Status* > Confirm Status	—

* View Notification Light settings for incoming calls/messages or engaged calls.

Settings Text Entry

Text Entry Method

From ► **Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings ► Text Entry Method**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Set Input Mode > Input Mode → Check input mode(s) to use → [Finish] → Select a input mode to prioritize	Input mode: All Prioritized mode: Mode 1 (5-touch)
■ Hide Predictive Candidates/Context Forecast List > Predict → OFF	ON (Show)
■ Disable Learning for Secret Mode/Secret Data Only > Learn in Secret Mode → Enter Phone Password → OFF	ON
■ Reset Learned Words > Reset Learned Words → Enter Phone Password → YES	—

Conversion

From ► Text entry window, [Menu] ► Text entry setting

Setting/Operation	Default
■ View Learned Words > Learned words → Select a row → Select a log ● To delete learned words: Highlight a log → [Menu] → Delete this or Delete all (→ For Delete all , enter Phone Password) → YES	—
■ Hide Predictive Candidates and Context Forecast Lists > Predict → OFF	ON (Show)
■ Hide Context Forecast List > Candidate display → OFF	ON (Show)
■ Fix Entered Characters Automatically > Character set time → Select a speed	OFF
■ Hide Word Suggestion Guidance for 2/NIKO-touch Input Method > 2/NIKO-touch guide → OFF	ON (Show)

Conversion during Message Text Entry

From ► **Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings**
 ► Universal Settings ► Text Predict

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Deactivate Pre-text Predict > <i>Pre-text Predict</i> → OFF	ON
■ Deactivate Time Season Predict > <i>Time Season Predict</i> → OFF	ON
■ Activate Text Expression > <i>Text Expression</i> → <i>Written Language</i> or <i>Colloquialism</i>	Normal Phrase

Settings Phone Book

From ► **Main Menu ► Phone ► Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Save Location for New Entry > <i>Save Settings</i> → <i>USIM</i> or <i>Ask Every Time</i>	Phone
■ Change Phone Book Search Method > <i>Search Method</i> → Select a method	A-KA-SA-TA-NA
■ Change Font Size > <i>Font Size</i> → <i>Phone Book</i> or <i>Call Log</i> → <i>Large</i>	Standard
■ Forbid Forwarding Phone Book Entry Images > <i>Forwarding Image</i> → OFF	ON*

* If **ON** is selected, images can be forwarded via Infrared, IC transmission or Bluetooth®.

Settings Voice Dial

From ► **Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings**
 ► Voice Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Activate Voice Dial Automatically > <i>Auto Voice Dial</i> → ON	OFF
■ Activate Voice Dial via Earphone or Bluetooth® Device > <i>Voice Earphone Dial</i> → ON	OFF

Settings Video Call

Function Menus

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Video Call

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Incoming Image Quality > <i>Incoming Video Qlty</i> → <i>Quality Prioritized</i> or <i>Motion Prioritized</i>	Standard
■ Change Outgoing Image > <i>Select Images</i> → Select a category → Highlight <i>Original</i> → [Menu] → <i>Change setting</i> → Select a folder → Select a file → [Play] to view image	Pre-installed
■ Switch Earpiece On > <i>Loud Speaker</i> → OFF	ON (Loud Speaker ON)
■ Switch to Voice Call when Video Call Fails > <i>Voice Call Auto Redial</i> → ON	OFF
■ Toggle Outgoing/Incoming Image Setting > <i>Switch Images</i> → Select an item	Receiving Priority
■ Monitor Room Remotely > <i>Remote Monitoring</i> (P.2-8)	—

Engaged Video Call Settings

From ► During a Video Call, [Menu] ► V. Call settings


Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Incoming Image Quality > <i>IncomingVideo Qlty</i> → <i>Qlty Prioritized</i> or <i>Motion Prioritized</i>	Standard
■ Change Brightness > <i>Brightness</i> → Select a brightness level	0
■ Adjust Outgoing Image Color Tone to Lighting Conditions > <i>White balance</i> → Select an environment	Automatic
■ Change Outgoing Image Color Tone > <i>Color mode set</i> → Select a color tone	Normal
■ Enhance Image Quality in Low Light Conditions > <i>Night mode</i> → ON	OFF
■ Set Focus* > <i>Focus</i> → Select a focus type	Landscape

* Outside Camera only

Settings Digital TV

From  **Main Menu** ► **TV** ► **User Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
Change Display Setting > <i>Display</i> → <i>Display Setting</i> → <i>Visual image+DBC</i> or <i>Enlarged V. image+DBC</i>	V. image+ Caption+ DBC
Change Caption Position in Landscape View > <i>Display</i> → <i>Caption Posit. In W-scr</i> → <i>Upper</i>	Lower
Hide Indicators in Landscape View > <i>Display</i> → <i>Icons</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON
Change Ticker Setting for Incoming Mail Notification > <i>Display</i> → <i>Mail Ticker Display</i> → <i>Sender+Subject</i> or <i>OFF</i>	Receipt Notification
Forbid Enhancing Frame Rate Automatically > <i>Video</i> → <i>Mobile W-Speed</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON
Change Image Quality > <i>Video</i> → <i>Image Quality</i> → Select an item	Dynamic
Set Back Light Duration while Watching TV > <i>Display Light</i> → <i>Lighting Duration</i> → Enter duration (min.)	Constant Light
Deactivate Auto Volume > <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>Auto Volume</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON
Remaster Sounds from Earphone or Bluetooth® Device > <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>Remaster</i> ¹ → <i>ON</i>	OFF

Add Listening Effect to Sound from Earphone or Bluetooth® Device > <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>Listening</i> ¹ → Select an item	OFF
Change Quality of Sound from Earphone or Bluetooth® Device > <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>Equalizer</i> ¹ → Select an item	Normal
End Recording when Battery Runs Low > <i>Recording</i> → <i>Rec. When Low Battery</i> → <i>Stop Recording</i>	Continue Recording
Start Recording TV Automatically when a Call Comes in while Watching TV > <i>Recording</i> → <i>Rec. Program When Call</i> → <i>ON</i>	OFF
Hide Images on Data Broadcast Sites > <i>Data Broadcasting</i> → <i>Images</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON
Turn Off Sounds from Data Broadcast/Sites > <i>Data Broadcasting</i> → <i>Sound Effect</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON
Show Confirmation on Data Broadcast > <i>Data Broadcasting</i> → <i>Reset Settings</i> → <i>YES</i>	—
Set Power Saving Mode² > <i>ECO Mode</i> → <i>YES</i>	OFF
Reset Channel List > <i>Reset Channel Setting</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>YES</i>	—
Delete Information in Broadcasting Storage Area > <i>Reset Storage Area</i> → (Highlight an affiliated channel →)  [Menu] → <i>Delete</i> → <i>Delete this</i> or <i>Delete all</i> (→ For <i>Delete all</i> , enter Phone Password) → <i>YES</i>	—

■ Reset TV Settings > Reset TV Settings → Enter Phone Password → YES	—
■ Check TV Settings > Check TV Settings	—

¹ Remaster/Listening/Equalizer Settings: (P.5-7)

² To cancel ECO Mode, perform same operation. When ECO Mode is set, following settings automatically activate and cannot be changed. When canceled, original settings return.

Mobile W-Speed: OFF

Image Quality: Normal

Remaster: OFF

Listening: OFF

Equalizer: Normal

Settings Camera

- Change settings before capturing images. (P.6-5).
- Some settings are not available depending on camera mode, image size or photo mode.

Camera Settings (Camera Mode/Action Mode)

Camera Mode

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Camera** ► **Camera** ► [Menu]

Action Mode

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Camera** ► **Camera** ► [Video]
 ► [Cont.] ► [Menu]

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Camera Mode > CHG camera-mode → Select a mode	—
■ Change Photo Mode > Photo mode (P.6-9)	Camera mode: Intelligent Auto Action mode: Normal
■ Change Image Size > Image size → Select a size	Camera mode: Standby (480x854) Action mode: VGA(480x640)

Change Brightness > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Brightness</i> → Select a level	±0
Adjust Color Balance According to Lighting Conditions > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>White balance</i> → Select an item	Auto
Change Color Mode > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Color mode set</i> → Select an item	Normal
Change Focus Setting > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Focus</i> → Select an item	Camera mode: Face Detection Action mode: Auto
Change Image Quality > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Image quality</i> → Select an item	Fine
Deactivate Image Stabilizer (Outside Camera only) > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Img. stabilizer</i> → OFF	Auto
Add Frames > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Shoot with frame</i> → ON → Select an frame → Capture an image	OFF
Change Shutter Click Sound > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Shutter sound</i> → Select an item	Sound 1
Minimize Flicker while Shooting near Fluorescent Light > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Flicker correction</i> → <i>Mode 1 (50Hz)</i> or <i>Mode 2 (60Hz)</i>	Automatically

Change Save Location > <i>Storage setting</i> → <i>Store in</i> → <i>microSD</i>	Phone
Set Auto-Save Off > <i>Storage setting</i> → <i>Auto save set</i> → OFF	ON (Automatically save)
Set Auto Shutter On > <i>Auto shutter</i> (P.6-7)	OFF
Capture Images with High Sensitivity > <i>High sensitiv.</i> → ON	OFF
Set Flash/Photo Light (Auto-flash) > <i>Flash setting</i> or <i>Photo light set.</i> (P.6-9)	Camera mode: Auto Action mode: OFF
Set Auto Timer > <i>Auto timer</i> (P.6-7)	OFF
Change Continuous Shooting Setting > <i>Cont. shooting set.</i> (P.6-10)	—
Change Viewfinder Size > <i>Display size</i> → <i>Fit in display</i>	Actual size
Hide Display Indicators > <i>Icon</i> → OFF	ON (Show)
View Memory Information > <i>Memory Status</i>	—

Video Camera Settings (Video Camera Mode)

From ► **Main Menu** ► **Camera** ► **Video Camera**
 ► [Menu]

Setting/Operation	Default
Change Camera Mode > <i>CHG camera-mode</i> → Select a mode	—
Change Photo Mode > <i>Photo mode</i> (P.6-9)	Normal
Change Image Size > <i>Image size</i> → Select a size	QCIF (176x144)
Change Recording Time > <i>File size setting</i> → <i>Long time</i>	Mail restrict'n(S) (for S! Mail attachment)
Change Brightness > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Brightness</i> → Select a level	±0
Adjust Color Balance According to Lighting Conditions > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>White balance</i> → Select an item	Auto
Change Color Mode > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Color mode set</i> → Select an item	Normal
Change Focus Setting > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Focus</i> → Select an item	Face Detection
Change Image Quality* > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Image quality</i> → Select an item	Normal
Deactivate Image Stabilizer (Outside Camera only) > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Img. stabilizer</i> → <i>OFF</i>	Auto

Change Shutter Click Sound > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Shutter sound</i> → Select an item	Sound 1
Minimize Flicker while Shooting near Fluorescent Light > <i>Camera settings</i> → <i>Flicker correction</i> → <i>Mode 1 (50Hz)</i> or <i>Mode 2 (60Hz)</i>	Automatically
Change Save Location > <i>Storage setting</i> → <i>Store in</i> → <i>microSD</i>	Phone
Set Auto-Save Off > <i>Storage setting</i> → <i>Auto save set</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON (Automatically save)
Set Photo Light (Auto-flash) > <i>Photo light set.</i> → <i>ON</i>	OFF
Set Auto Timer > <i>Auto timer</i> (P.6-7)	OFF
Forbid Recording Audio > <i>Movie type set</i> → <i>Video</i>	Normal
Change Viewfinder Size > <i>Display size</i> → <i>Fit in display</i>	Actual size
Change to S! Mail Attachment Mode > <i>Attach S! Mail mode</i> → <i>YES</i>	—
Hide Display Indicators > <i>Icon</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON (Show)
View Memory Information > <i>Memory Status</i>	—

* Available only when *File size setting* is set to *Long time*

Settings Mobile Widget (Japanese)

From ► Main Menu ► Widget ► Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Deactivate Auto Update > Auto Refresh → OFF	ON (Activate)
■ Activate Auto Roaming Abroad > Auto Roaming → ON	OFF (Deactivate)
■ Hide Confirmation when Roaming Abroad > Roaming Notification → OFF	ON (Show)
■ Forbid Sending/Receiving Cookies > Cookies → OFF	ON (Send/Receive)
■ Delete Cookies > Delete Cookies → YES	—

Settings S! Quick News (Japanese)

Display Settings

From ► Main Menu ► Settings ► Display Settings
► Internal Display ► S! Quick News Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Show Only Unread Items in Standby > Unread/Read Setting → Unread	Unread + Read
■ Change Marquee Speed > Marquee Speed → Fast or Slow	Normal
■ Hide S! Quick News > Display Always → OFF	ON (Show)
■ Image Download > Image Display → ON	OFF

Auto Update/Deleting Information

From ► **Main Menu** ► News/Entertainment
► S! Quick News ► Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Automatically Update Quick News in S! Quick News List^{1 2} > <i>Auto Refresh</i> → S! Quick News → Set update frequency	OFF
■ Automatically Update General News (Once a day)^{1 2} > <i>Auto Refresh</i> → General → ON	OFF
■ Automatically Update Special News (Every four hours)^{1 2} > <i>Auto Refresh</i> → Special → ON	OFF
■ Delete S! Quick News Information > <i>Del S! Quick News List</i> → YES → Enter Phone Password	—

¹ If calls are in progress at update time, auto update does not occur until next update.

² Video Calls are rejected during auto update.

Settings Bluetooth®

From ► **Main Menu** ► Tools ► Bluetooth
► My Devices Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Set Authentication/Encryption to Send Phone Book Entries > <i>Set Authentications</i> → ON → ON	OFF/OFF
■ Enter Password when Sending All Phone Book Entries > <i>Session Number Setting</i> → ON	OFF
■ Set Duration to Search for Bluetooth® Devices > <i>Time-out to Search</i> → Enter duration (sec.)	05 sec
■ Stop Ringtone Output to Headset/Handsfree Device > <i>Forward Ring Tone</i> → OFF	ON
■ Continue Calls on Handset when Bluetooth® is Disconnected from Headset/Handsfree Device > <i>Disconnection Settings</i> → Continue on the Phone	End the Call
■ Always Make Calls from Handset even when Headset Device is Connected > <i>Dial from Headset</i> → Deactivate	Activate
■ Always Use Handsfree Device to Make/Receive Calls > <i>Handsfree Setting</i> → Handsfree Mode	Private Mode ¹

■ View Bluetooth® Properties

> Device Properties²

¹ In **Private Mode**, device that makes/answers call takes priority.

² Device name, address, class and supported services appear.

To change device name: [Envelope Icon] [Edit]

Settings Messaging

Universal Settings

From ► Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings
► Universal Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change Font Size* > Font Size → <i>Small</i> or <i>Large</i>	Normal
■ Set Scroll Unit in Text Entry/Preview Window > Scroll Unit → <i>Half Screen</i> or <i>Whole Screen</i>	Single Line
■ Quote Original Message in Reply > Quote Message → <i>ON (S! Mail/SMS)</i> or <i>OFF</i>	ON (S! Mail)
■ Request Delivery Confirmation (Available when messaging to SoftBank handset numbers) > Delivery Report → <i>ON</i>	OFF
■ Change Anti-Spam Measures > Anti-Spam Measures → Report Spam → ⊙ [Edit] → Edit recipient address → [Envelope Icon] [Finish] → YES	stop@meiwaku. softbankmobile. co.jp
■ Reset Anti-Spam Measures > Anti-Spam Measures → Report Spam → [Menu] [Y] → Reset Address → [Envelope Icon] [Finish] → YES	—
■ Set Auto Delete Off (For Sent/Unsent) > Auto Sent Msg Del → <i>OFF</i>	ON

■ Set Auto Delete Off (For Incoming Mail) > Auto Received Msg Del → ON (Read Msg Only) or OFF	ON (All Msg)
■ Hide Incoming Mail Notification while Other Function is Active > Receiving Display → Operation Preferred	Alarm Preferred (Show)
■ Hide Outgoing Mail Display > Sending Display → OFF	ON (Show)

* Character size in SMS or S! Mail subject field does not change. Check preview to see actual size.

S! Mail Settings

From **Main Menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Settings**
▶ S! Mail Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Set Reply-to Address > Sending Options → Set Reply-To → ON → Select reply-to address entry field → Select a reply-to address or enter directly → [Finish]	OFF (Not set)
■ Set Signature > Sending Options → Set Signature → Select an item (→ ON or ON When New → Select signature entry field → Enter signature → [Finish])	OFF (Not set)
■ Set Auto-Compression for Image Files Off > Sending Options → Image Compression → OFF	ON ¹
■ Set S! Mail Download Condition (within Japan) > Incoming Options → Home Auto Setting → Download by Numbers or Manual Retrieval	Auto Download All
■ Retrieve S! Mail Manually while Abroad > Incoming Options → Roaming Auto Setting → Manual Retrieval	Auto Download
■ Play Attached Music Files Automatically² > Incoming Options → Auto Sound Play → ON	OFF (Not play back)

¹ JPEG files only

² When multiple sound files are attached, the first file plays.

SMS Settings

From ► **Main Menu ► Messaging ► Settings**
 ► **SMS Settings**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Change SMS Center Number* > <i>Message Center</i> → Enter SMS Center number	+819066519300
■ Set Input Character to English > <i>Set Input Character</i> → <i>English (160char.)</i>	Japanese (70char.)

* Changing Message Center number may disable SMS.

Settings Internet

Browser Display Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

From ► **Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Set Yahoo! Keitai**

PC Site Browser

From ► **Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► PC Site Browser**
 ► **Set PC Site Browser**

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Font Size > <i>Font Size</i> → <i>Large</i> or <i>Small</i>	Normal
■ Scroll Unit > <i>Scroll Unit</i> → <i>Whole Screen</i> or <i>Half Screen</i>	Single Line
■ Images Off > <i>Downloads</i> → <i>Display Image</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON
■ Sound Off > <i>Downloads</i> → <i>Play Sounds</i> → <i>OFF</i>	ON
■ Hide Warning Messages when Activating PC Site Browser or Switching to Yahoo! Keitai* > <i>Warning Messages</i> → <i>PC Site Browser</i> (when activating) or <i>Yahoo! Keitai</i> (when switching) → <i>OFF</i>	ON

* PC Site Browser only

Memory Manager & Reset

Yahoo! Keitai

From ► **Main Menu** ► Yahoo! ► Set Yahoo! Keitai

PC Site Browser

From ► **Main Menu** ► Yahoo! ► PC Site Browser
► Set PC Site Browser

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Clear Cache > <i>Memory Manager</i> → Clear Cache → YES	—
■ Delete Cookies > <i>Memory Manager</i> → Delete Cookies → YES	—
■ Delete User ID or Password Entered when Authentication is Required > <i>Memory Manager</i> → Delete Certificates → YES	—
■ Set Data Storage Location to microSD Card* > <i>Save Settings</i> → microSD	Phone

* Yahoo! Keitai Browser only

Security Settings

Yahoo! Keitai

From ► **Main Menu** ► Yahoo! ► Set Yahoo! Keitai
► Security

PC Site Browser

From ► **Main Menu** ► Yahoo! ► PC Site Browser
► Set PC Site Browser ► Security

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Set Auto Send Off for Manufacturer's Number (for Authentication) > <i>Manufacture Number</i> → OFF	ON (Send)
■ Forbid Sending Referer Information > <i>Send Referer</i> → OFF	ON (Send)
■ Select whether or Not to Allow Cookies to Be Stored on Handset > <i>Cookies</i> → OFF or Ask Every Time	ON (Save)
■ Select whether or Not to Run Scripts in Yahoo! Keitai ¹ > <i>Script</i> → Select an item	Ask before Connect
■ Select whether or Not to Run Scripts in PC Site Browser ² > <i>Script</i> → Select an item	ON (Run)
■ View Server Certificates Issued by Certificate Authorities > <i>Root Certificates</i> → Select an item	—

<p>■ Select whether or Not to Retain Authentication Information</p> <p>> <i>Certificate Retention</i> → <i>Always Keep</i> or <i>Not Keep</i></p>	Keep While Browsing
<p>■ Hide Confirmation when Connecting to Secure Site</p> <p>> <i>Secure Prompt</i> → <i>OFF</i></p>	ON

¹ Yahoo! Keitai Browser only

² PC Site Browser only

Reset

Yahoo! Keitai

From ► Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► Reset


PC Site Browser

From ► Main Menu ► Yahoo! ► PC Site Browser ► Reset

Setting/Operation	Default
<p>■ Reset Browser Settings</p> <p>> <i>Restore Defaults</i> → <i>YES</i> → Enter Phone Password</p>	—
<p>■ Initialize Browser</p> <p>> <i>Initialized Browser</i> → <i>YES</i> → Enter Phone Password</p>	—

Settings S! Appli

From ► Main Menu ► S! Appli ► S! Appli Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
<p>■ Volume</p> <p>> <i>Volume</i> →  to adjust volume</p>	Level 4
<p>■ Backlight On/Off¹</p> <p>> <i>Display Backlight</i> → <i>Always ON</i> or <i>Always OFF</i></p>	Follow General Setting ²
<p>■ Deactivate Vibration</p> <p>> <i>Vibration</i> → <i>OFF</i></p>	ON (Activate)
<p>■ Update S! Appli Information on microSD Card from Another Handset</p> <p>> <i>Synchronize microSD</i></p>	—

¹ Back Light does not go out completely when S! Appli is active.

² Back Light Time setting (P.18-5) applies.

Settings Osaifu-Keitai®

From ► Main Menu ► Tools ► Osaifu-Keitai
► IC Card Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
<p>■ View IC Card Status</p> <p>> <i>IC Card Status</i></p>	—
<p>■ Disable Handset Response to Commands from Reader/Writer</p> <p>> <i>Interface Settings</i> → Enter Phone Password → Select an item → <i>OFF</i></p>	All ON

Settings S! GPS Navi Settings

From ► Main Menu ► Tools ► S! GPS Navi ► NAVI Settings

Setting/Operation	Default
■ Select Navi Appli to Activate > <i>Select Navi Appli</i> → Select a Navi Appli	NAVITIME
■ Save Current Map URL > <i>Map URL Settings</i> → Highlight <Not Recorded> → [Edit] → <i>URL Name</i> → Enter a name → <i>Map URL</i> → Enter a URL ("http://" or "https://") → [Finish]	—
■ Select Map URL > <i>Map URL Settings</i> → Select a name	NAVITIME
■ Edit/Delete Map URL* > <i>Map URL Settings</i> → Highlight a name → [Menu] → <i>Edit</i> or <i>Delete</i>	—
■ Activate to Lock Positioning Function > <i>Positioning Lock</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>ON</i>	OFF
■ Hide Confirmation when Sending Location Information > <i>Send Location Info</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>Send without Check</i> (Send location information without showing confirmation)	Send with Check (Show confirmation every time)
■ Hide Notification of Incoming Location Provision Request > <i>Notification Setting</i> → Enter Phone Password → <i>OFF</i>	ON

■ Set Positioning Ringtone/Vibrator/Ringtone Duration

> *Recv Location Request* → *Ringtone*,
Vibration Alert or *Ringtone Duration* →
 Set individual item

Ringtone:
 Pattern 2
 Vibrator Alert:
 Pattern 1
 Ringtone
 Duration:
 05 seconds

* Pre-installed NAVITIME cannot be edited or deleted.

Default Settings

Default settings vary by handset color as below.

- For operations, refer to respective setting sections.

Setting			Moonlight Purple	Pink	Champagne	Black
Notification Light (P.18-10)	Incoming	Voice Call	A-Signal	B-Signal	C-Signal	D-Signal
		Video Call	A-Signal	B-Signal	C-Signal	D-Signal
		Message	A-Rhythm	B-Rhythm	C-Rhythm	D-Rhythm
	Slide	Slide Open	Slide-01	Slide-02	Slide-03	Slide-04
		Slide Close	Slide-05	Slide-06	Slide-07	Slide-08
	Speed Selector		Rotation-01	Rotation-04	Rotation-07	Rotation-10
Display Settings (P.18-3 to 6)	Stand-by Display		Purple (Image)	Pink (Image)	Champagne (Image)	Black (Image)
	Stand-by Clock (Pattern)		Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 1	Pattern 4
	Icon Clock		Pattern 4	Pattern 4	Pattern 1	Pattern 4
	Outgoing Image (Call/Message)		Purple	Pink	Pink	Black
	Incoming Image (Call/Message)		Purple	Pink	Pink	Black
	Menu Icons		Purple	Pink	Champagne	Original
	Color Scheme		Purple	Pink	Gold	Black

Confirming Settings

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings
► Confirm Settings

■ Confirmable Settings

- Back Light Time
- View Blind
- Volume
- Shikkari Talk
- Noise Reduction
- Select Network
- Speed Selector Setting
- Motion Control Setting

● ★ appears for items changed from default settings.

Appendix

Function List	19-2
Troubleshooting.....	19-10
Warning Signs	19-12
Software Update	19-12
Updating Software Manually.....	19-12
Updating Software Automatically	19-13
Quick Open Menu	19-14
Key Assignments (5-touch Mode)	19-15
Key Assignments (2-touch Mode)	19-16
Key Assignments (NIKO-touch Mode)	19-17
Symbol List	19-18
Character Code List	19-19
Weather Indicator List.....	19-24
Memory List.....	19-25
Specifications	19-26
Index.....	19-27
Warranty & Service.....	19-33
Warranty	19-33
After-Sales Service	19-33
Customer Service.....	19-34

Function List

From Main Menu, press key corresponding to a menu number for direct access (P.1-19).

Example: To select **S! Mail Settings** in Messaging menu:

1 first column **9** second column **3** third column

① (Messaging) → **⑨ (Settings)** → **③ (S! Mail Settings)**


- To select ①: → ①; To select ②: → ②
- When Menu Icons are set to Basic or Customize, first column of function number is not available. Select a menu from Main Menu; then select a function number (second column in table).

Messaging		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
1	Messaging	—
1	Incoming Mail	—
1	Received	P.14-3
2	ユーザーフォルダ 1	P.14-3
3	ユーザーフォルダ 2	P.14-3
4	ユーザーフォルダ 3	P.14-3
5	Spam Folder	P.14-3
2	Create New	P.14-4
3	Retrieve New	P.14-14
4	Drafts	P.14-15
5	Templates	—
1	Download Templates	P.14-9
6	Sent/Unsent	—
1	Sent/Unsent	P.14-3
2	ユーザーフォルダ 1	P.14-3
3	ユーザーフォルダ 2	P.14-3

1	6	4	ユーザーフォルダ 3	P.14-3
	7		Server Mail	—
	1		Retrieve Mail List	P.14-14
	2		Retrieve All	P.14-14
	3		Delete All	P.14-14
	4		Server Mail Memory	P.14-15
	8		Create New SMS	P.14-7
	9		Settings	—
	1		Custom Mail Address	P.14-3
	2		Universal Settings	P.18-20
	3		S! Mail Settings	P.18-21
	4		SMS Settings	P.18-22
	0		Memory Status	P.14-3


Yahoo! (Yahoo! Keitai)		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
2	Yahoo!	—
1	Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-3
2	Menu List	P.15-3
3	Bookmarks	P.15-8
4	Saved Pages	P.15-8
5	Enter URL	—
1	Direct Entry	P.15-4
2	URL History List	P.15-4
6	History	P.15-4
7	PC Site Browser	—
1	Homepage	P.15-5
2	Bookmarks	P.15-8
3	Saved Pages	P.15-8
4	Enter URL	P.15-5


2	7	5	History	P.15-5
		6	Yahoo! Keitai	P.15-5
		7	Set PC Site Browser	P.18-22
		8	Reset	P.18-24
	8		Set Yahoo! Keitai	—
		1	Font Size	P.18-22
		2	Scroll Unit	P.18-22
		3	Downloads	P.18-22
		4	Memory Manager	P.18-23
		5	Security	P.18-23
		6	Save Settings	P.18-23
	9		Reset	—
		1	Restore Defaults	P.18-24
		2	Initialized Browser	P.18-24


 S! Appli				
Menu Number/Function Name			Page	
3	S! Appli		—	
	1	S! Appli List	—	
		1 Download S! Appli	P.16-2	
	2	Osaifu-Keitai	—	
		1 Lifestyle-Appli	P.13-10, P.16-2	
		2 IC Card Settings	P.13-12	
	3	S! Appli Settings	—	
		1 Volume	P.18-24	
		2 Display Backlight	P.18-24	
		3 Vibration	P.18-24	
		4 Synchronize microSD	P.18-24	
	4	S! Appli History	P.16-3	
	5	Information	P.16-2	

News/Entertainment

Menu Number/Function Name		Page
4	News/Entertainment	—
	1 S! Info Ch./Weather	—
	1 What's New?	P.8-2
	2 History	P.8-2
	3 Register/Cancel	P.8-2
	4 Get Latest Contents	P.8-2
	5 Weather Indicator	P.8-3
	2 S! Quick News	—
	1 S! Quick News List	P.8-4
	2 Settings	P.18-19
	3 BookSurfing	P.8-6
	4 e-Book Viewer	P.8-6
	5 Post Blog	P.8-7


 Camera		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
5	Camera	—
	1 Camera	P.6-6
	2 Video Camera	P.6-7
	3 Camera-Touch	P.6-13
	4 Pictures	P.6-12
	5 Videos	P.6-12
	6 Album-Touch	P.6-15

 Music (Music Player)		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
6	Music	—
1	Player	—
1	All Tracks	P.9-6
2	Play List	P.9-6
3	Artist	P.9-6
4	Album	P.9-6
5	Genre	P.9-6
2	Data Manager	—
1	Main Folder	P.9-7
2	WMA	P.9-7

 Tools		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
7	Tools	—
1	Alarms	P.13-6
2	Calendar	P.13-2
3	Calculator	P.13-8
4	Notepad	P.13-8
5	Tasks	P.13-5
6	Osaifu-Keitai	—
1	Lifestyle-Appli	P.13-10
2	IC Card Settings	P.13-12
7	Dictionary	P.13-13
8	Sound Recorders	—
1	Voice Call Data	P.2-16
2	Video Call Data	P.2-16
3	Answer Phone Setting	P.2-17


7	8	4	Voice Recorder	P.13-14
		5	Voice Announce	P.13-14
	9		Bar Code Reader	—
		1	Scan Barcodes	P.13-15
		2	Saved Data List	P.13-16
	0		SI GPS Navi	—
		1	Navi Appli	P.17-3
		2	Current Location	P.17-2
		3	Location Navi	P.17-3
		4	Location Logs	P.17-3
		5	NAVI Settings	P.18-25
	①		Bluetooth	—
		1	Search&Paired Device	P.11-7
		2	Bluetooth OFF/Bluetooth ON	P.11-8
		3	Accept Registered	P.11-9
		4	Dialup Rgstry Standby	P.11-10
		5	Receive via Bluetooth	P.11-9
		6	My Devices Settings	P.18-19
	②		Receive via Infrared	—
		1	Receive	P.11-3
		2	Receive All	P.11-4
	③		microSD Backup	—
		1	Phone Book	P.10-18
		2	Calendar	P.10-18
		3	Tasks	P.10-18
		4	Incoming Mail	P.10-18
		5	Sent Messages	P.10-18
		6	Unsent Messages	P.10-18
		7	Drafts	P.10-18
		8	Memo Pad	P.10-18
		9	Bookmarks	P.10-18


7	④	Templates/Users Dic.	—
	1	Templates	P.3-6
	2	User's Dictionary	P.3-11
	3	Download Dictionary	P.3-11
	⑤	Pedometer	P.13-17


 Data Folder		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
8	Data Folder	—
1	Pictures	—
	1 Download Pictures	P.10-2
	2 Album-Touch	P.6-15
	3 Main Folder	P.10-2
	4 Camera	P.10-2
	5 My Pictograms	P.10-2
	6 Mail Art	P.10-2
	7 Pre-installed	P.10-2
	8 Original Animation	P.10-13
2	Ring Songs&Tones	—
	1 DL Ring Songs&Tones	P.10-2
	2 Main Folder	P.10-2
	3 Pre-installed	P.10-2
	4 Voice Announce	P.10-2
	5 Play List	P.10-2
3	S! Appli	—
	1 Download S! Appli	P.16-2
4	Widget	—
	1 Download Widget	P.7-4

8	5	Music	—
	1	Main Folder	P.10-2
	2	WMA	P.10-2
	6	Videos	—
	1	Download Videos	P.10-3
	2	Main Folder	P.10-3
	3	Camera	P.10-3
	4	Pre-installed	P.10-3
	5	Play List	P.10-3
	6	Position Memory	P.10-6
	7	PC Movies	—
	1	microSD	P.10-3
	2	Position Memory	P.10-6
	3	Play History	P.10-3
	8	TV	—
	1	Image	P.5-14
	2	Video	P.5-13
	3	Position Memory	P.10-3
	9	Lifestyle-Appli	—
	1	Download	P.13-10
	0	Books	—
	1	Download Books	P.10-3
	①	Customized Screen	—
	1	Customized Screen	P.1-23
	②	Templates	—
	1	Download Templates	P.14-9
	③	Font	—
	1	Download Font	P.10-3
	2	Main Folder	P.10-3
	3	Pre-installed	P.10-3

8	④	Other Documents	—
1		Main Folder	P.10-3

 Widget (Mobile Widget)			
Menu Number/Function Name			Page
9	Widget		—
1	Widget Store		P.7-4
2	Widget Contents		—
1	Download Widget		P.7-4
3	Settings		—
1	Delete Content		P.7-2
2	Auto Refresh		P.18-18
3	Auto Roaming		P.18-18
4	Roaming Notification		P.18-18
5	Cookies		P.18-18
6	Delete Cookies		P.18-18

 TV		
Menu Number/Function Name		Page
✱	TV	—
1	Watch TV	P.5-5
2	Program List	P.5-7
3	Timer Watching	P.5-14
4	Timer Recording	P.5-14
5	Recording Result	P.5-14
6	TV Link	P.5-10
7	Channel List	P.5-4
8	Channel Setting	—
1	Select Area	P.5-4
2	Automatic	P.5-4
9	User Settings	—
1	Display	P.18-14
2	Video	P.18-14
3	Display Light	P.18-14
4	Sound Effect	P.18-14
5	Recording	P.18-14
6	Data Broadcasting	P.18-14
7	ECO Mode	P.18-14
8	Reset Channel Setting	P.18-14
9	Reset Storage Area	P.18-14
0	Reset TV Settings	P.18-15
✱	Check TV Settings	P.18-15

 Phone		
	Menu Number/Function Name	Page
	Phone	—
1	Phone Book	P.4-2
2	Create New Entry	P.4-3
3	Call Log	—
	1 Outgoing Call Logs	P.2-13
	2 Incoming Call Logs	P.2-13
4	Group	P.4-6
5	Account Details	P.1-30, P.4-12
6	S! Addressbook BkUp	—
	1 Start Sync	P.4-10
	2 Details	P.4-11
7	Memory Manager	P.4-9
8	Restrictions	P.12-10
9	Settings	—
	1 Save Settings	P.18-12
	2 Search Method	P.18-12
	3 Font Size	P.18-12
	4 Voice Dial	P.4-13
	5 Mail Group	P.14-18
	6 Forwarding Image	P.18-12
0	Memory Status	P.4-9

- Number in first column is not available for Phone Book.

 Settings		
	Menu Number/Function Name	Page
#	Settings	—
1	Sound Settings	—
	1 Ring Tones	P.18-2
	2 Machi-Uta	P.18-2
	3 Ringer Volume	P.18-2
	4 Key Tone	P.18-3
	5 Speed Selector Sound	P.18-6
	6 Stereo/3D Sound	P.18-2
	7 Earphone	P.18-2
	8 Message Ring Tones	P.18-2
2	Display Settings	—
	1 Internal Display	P.18-3
	2 Font Size	P.18-6
	3 Font	P.1-24
	4 Menu Icons	P.18-4
	5 Back Light Time	P.18-5
	6 View Blind	P.1-30
	7 Color	P.18-4
	8 Private Menu	P.1-25
	言語設定	P.18-4
	0 Open For New	P.18-4
	* LCD AI	P.18-5
	# Disp. Call/Recv #	P.18-6
	① Describe Icons	P.1-9
3	Customized Screen	—
	1 Customized Screen	P.1-24
	2 Release Settings	P.1-24

#	4	Incoming Settings	—
	1	Vibrator	P.18-2
	2	Manner Mode Type	P.18-7
	3	Answer Setting	P.18-7
	4	Open-to-Ans. Call	P.18-7
	5	Call Logs	P.12-10
	6	Phone Book Image	P.18-7
	7	Ring Time Settings	P.12-13
	8	Auto Answer	P.18-7
	9	In-call Management	P.18-7
	5	Phone Settings	—
	1	Speed Selector Setting	P.18-6
	2	Motion Control Setting	P.18-6
	3	Text Entry Method	P.18-11
	4	Battery	P.18-3
	5	Pause Dial	P.2-3
	6	Headset Switch to Call	P.18-9
	7	Voice Settings	P.18-12
	8	Confirm Settings	P.18-27
	9	Software Update	P.19-12
	6	Date & Time	—
	1	Date & Time	P.18-8
	2	World Clock	P.18-8
	3	Daylight Savings	P.18-8
	4	Alarm Tone	P.18-8
	5	Time Correction	P.18-8


#	7	Security	—
	1	Privacy Key Lock	P.12-5
	2	Personal Data Lock	P.12-6
	3	IC Card Lock	P.13-12
	4	Keyguard	P.12-4
	5	Keyguard Setting	P.12-4
	6	Secret Mode	P.12-10
	7	Secret Data Only	P.12-10
	8	Key Pad Dial Lock	P.12-9
	9	Reject Unknown	P.12-13
	0	Call Setting w/o ID	P.12-13
	✱	All Reset	P.12-14
	#	Reset Settings	P.12-14
	①	PIN Authentication	P.12-2
	②	Change Phone Password	P.12-2
	③	Timer Lock at Close	P.12-7
	④	Lock OFF at Open	P.12-7
	⑤	Content Key	P.10-22
	⑥	Lock Message	P.12-8
	8	Call Settings	—
	1	Call Time/Cost	P.18-9
	2	Reset	P.18-9
	3	Set Max Cost Limit	P.18-9
	4	Voice Mail/Call Fwding	P.2-18, P.2-19
	5	Call Waiting	P.2-20
	6	Call Barring	P.2-21
	7	Missed Call Notifi.	P.2-20
	8	Prefix	P.2-3
	9	Volume	P.18-9
	0	Shikkari Talk	P.2-5
	✱	Setting When Closed	P.18-9

#	8	#	Hold Tones	P.18-9
		①	Noise Reduction	P.18-9
		②	Quality Alarm	P.18-9
		③	Reconnect Signal	P.18-9
		④	Offline Mode	P.1-17
		⑤	Show My Number	P.2-22
		⑥	Service Numbers	P.18-9
	9		Video Call	—
		1	Incoming Video Qlty	P.18-13
		2	Select Images	P.18-13
		3	Loud Speaker	P.18-13
		4	Voice Call Auto Redial	P.18-13
		5	Switch Images	P.18-13
		6	Remote Monitoring	P.2-8
	0		International Call	—
		1	Int'l Dial Assist	P.2-10
		2	Select Operator	P.2-11
		3	PLMN Setting	P.2-11
		4	Operator Name	P.2-11
		5	Select Network	P.2-11
	①		Connectivity	—
		1	USB Mode	P.11-11
		2	Retrieve NW Info	P.1-15
	②		Notification Light	—
		1	Incoming	P.4-4, P.18-10
		2	Online	P.18-10
		3	Missed Call/Unread	P.18-10
		4	Slide	P.18-10
		5	Music	P.18-10
		6	Bluetooth	P.18-10
		7	IC Card	P.18-10

#	②	8	Speed Selector	P.18-10
		9	Confirm Status	P.18-10

Troubleshooting

Handset does not turn on

- Was  pressed for more than one second?
- Is battery level sufficient?
- Is battery inserted properly? (☞P.1-14)



Handset functions do not work after turning power on

- Does PIN Entry window appear?
PIN Authentication is **ON**. Enter PIN (☞P.12-2).

USIM not inserted After power-off Insert USIM or Inserted USIM is unavailable to this mobile phone Please insert valid one appears when handset is turned on or operations attempted

- Is USIM Card inserted correctly? (☞P.1-3)
- Is SoftBank specified USIM Card inserted? (☞P.1-2).
- USIM Card IC chip may be dirty.
Wipe with a clean cloth, then insert USIM Card correctly.




Keypad does not respond

- Does  appear in Standby?
Keyguard (☞P.12-3) is active. Cancel it.
- Does  appear?
Privacy Key Lock is active (☞P.12-4). Cancel it.


Display is blurred

- Adjust display brightness (☞P.18-5).
- Is View Blind active?
Cancel View Blind (☞P.1-30).

Outgoing calls or Video Calls will not connect or message and Internet connections are unavailable

- Does  appear?
Is handset out-of-range or in a location where signal is weak?
Move to a location where signal is strong.
- Does  appear?
Cancel Offline Mode (☞P.1-17)
- Are you using handset overseas?
Set international settings (e.g. Select Operator) to use abroad (☞P.2-10).
- Does  appear?
Personal Data Lock is set (☞P.12-4). Deactivate Personal Data Lock.


Outgoing calls or Video Calls will not connect

- Is area code entered?
- Is restricting outgoing calls in Call Barring? (☞P.2-20)
- Does  appear in Standby? Total cost has reached upper limit. Set Max Cost Limit to **OFF** or execute **Reset** (☞P.18-9).

Outgoing calls will not connect or busy signal sounds

- Did you enter area code?
- Is restricting outgoing calls in Call Barring? (☞P.2-20)


Call is interrupted or disconnected

- Does  appear? Is handset out-of-range or in a location where signal is weak?
Move to a location where signal is strong.

Cannot start any more functions appears when a menu is opened.

- Maximum number of functions are active at the same time. Cancel current function and try again (☞P.1-29).

Calls cannot be made via a Phone Book entry

- Entry may be saved as Secret.
Set Secret Mode or Secret Data Only **ON** (☞P.11-9).
- Does  appear?
Personal Data Lock is set (☞P.12-4). Deactivate Personal Data Lock.


Digital TV does not work

- Is handset out of terrestrial Digital TV broadcasting service area or in a location where airwaves are weak?
Move to a location where airwaves are strong (☞P.5-3).

Customized Screen setting cannot be canceled

- Enter "6368##" in Standby → **Release Settings**
Customized Screen cannot be canceled in Standby while Simple menu is active. Deactivate Simple menu in Standby.

Osaifu-Keitai® does not work

- Does  appear?
Deactivate IC Card Lock (☞P.12-5).

Display clock is reset

- Replacing battery does not reset Display clock; however, if battery is removed for long periods, the clock may be reset. Set Date & Time (☞P.18-8) or Retrieve NW Info (☞P.1-16) again.

Cannot charge battery

- Is AC Charger (sold separately) firmly connected to handset or Desktop Holder (not included)? (☞P.1-15)
- Is AC Charger securely plugged into an outlet?
- Is battery installed in handset correctly? (☞P.1-14)
- Is handset correctly mounted in Desktop Holder?
- Make sure handset, battery, Desktop Holder and AC Charging terminals are clean.
- Battery may not charge beyond +5°C and +35°C.
- Battery may need to be replaced.

Handset/accessories feel warm

- AC Charger/Desktop Holder may warm during charging.
Handset may warm during long use. This is normal if you can hold it comfortably. Low temperature burns may occur if handset is held against skin for long periods.




Battery Operating Time is greatly reduced

- Battery Operating Time may be reduced by environmental factors such as temperature, charging conditions or signal strength, as well as by operations or settings. See "Charging Time & Operating Time Estimates" (☞P.1-12) and "Battery Time" (☞P.1-13).

Note


- If you did not find the remedy to your problem here, please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center (☞P.19-34).

Warning Signs

Problem	Causes and Remedies
 appears	Handset is out-of-range. Move to a location where signal is strong.
 appears	Keyguard is active (➡P.12-4). Cancel Keyguard to use keys. Answer calls even if Keyguard is active.
 appears	Privacy Key Lock is active (➡P.12-4). Cancel it to use handset. Answer calls even if Privacy Key Lock is active.
Low battery message appears and battery alarm tone sounds	Battery is low. Charge (➡P.1-15) or replace battery (➡P.1-14).

Software Update

Check for 940P software updates and download as required.
Choose to begin update or schedule update.

- Connection fees do not apply to updates (including checking for updates, downloading and rewriting).
- Fully charge battery beforehand. Even if  appears, low battery message may appear. In this case, charge battery until Notification Light/Charging Indicator goes out.
- Select a place where signal is strong and stable.
- Do not remove battery during the update. Update will fail.
- Other functions are not available during Software Update.
- The update may take some time.

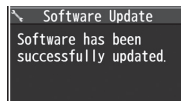
Updating Software Manually

Main Menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings
▶ Software Update ▶ Software Update

1 [YES] → Follow onscreen instructions

After download is complete, handset automatically turns off and restarts before Software Update begins.

After Software Update is complete, handset automatically turns off and restarts before information appears for successful update (This process takes approximately 60 seconds.).



Updating Software Automatically

Main Menu ► Settings ► Phone Settings
► Software Update ► Regular Updates

1 YES → Follow onscreen instructions

- Internet connection required for updates (transmission fees do not apply for updates). For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

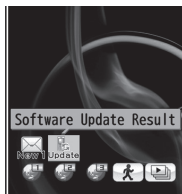
Update Results

When Event Indicator appears, **Update** →




- When **Update** indicator does not appear,

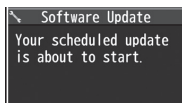
Main Menu ► Settings
► Phone Settings
► Software Update
► Update Results



Scheduled Update

Follow onscreen instructions for setup.
Confirmation appears at scheduled update time. Press  or wait ten seconds for update to start.

- Software Update will not start while handset is in use. Continuing handset usage for ten minutes or more cancels Scheduled Update.



Note

- If handset does not power on after Software Update, remove then re-insert battery and try again. If handset still does not power on, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (☎P.19-34).
- Software Update failure may disable handset. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (☎P.19-34).
- Software Update does not affect Phone Book entries, files saved in Data Folder or other content, but it is recommended that you create a backup of any important information and data (note that some files cannot be copied).
- SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from loss of data, information, etc.
- Alarm tone does not sound during update.
- For more information, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>).

Quick Open Menu

When **Menu Icons** is set to **Basic** or **Customize** (P.18-4), press menu numbers in Main Menu to open the following functions.

Example: To open Notepad:





In Standby,  →  

Menu	#
Alarm	44
Calendar	45
Calculator	85
Notepad	42
Tasks	95
Sound Recorders	55
Receive via Infrared	79
Templates/Users Dictionary	38
Pictures folder	46
Ring Songs&Tones folder	16
Phone Book Settings	26
Ring Tones	13
Ringer Volume	50
Key Tone	30
Stereo/3D Sound	64
Earphone/Speaker Settings	51
Message Ring Tones	68

Menu	#
Internal Display	56
Font Settings	66
Menu Icons	57
Back Light Time	70
Color Theme	86
Private Menu Settings	52
Language	15
Describe Icons	36
Vibrator	54
Manner Mode Type	20
Answer Setting	58
Ring Time Settings	90
Auto Answer	94
Text Entry Method	35
Date & Time	31
Secret Mode	40
Secret Data Only	41
Call Setting w/o ID	10
Reset Settings	23
Change Phone Password	29
Call Time/Cost	61
Reset Total Duration/Cost	60
Setting When Closed	18
Noise Reduction	76
Quality Alarm	75

Menu	#
Reconnect Signal	77
Show My Number	17
Notification Light	89

Key Assignments (5-touch Mode)

Display Key	漢	カナ	abc	123
1	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ ¹	. / @ - :    ² _ 1	1
2	かきくけこ	カキクケコ ²	a b c A B C 2	2
3	さしすせそ	サシスセソ ³	d e f D E F 3	3
4	たちつてとっ	タチツテトツ ⁴	g h i G H I 4	4
5	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ ⁵	j k l J K L 5	5
6	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ ⁶	m n o M N O 6	6
7	まみむめも	マミムメモ ⁷	p q r s P Q R S 7	7
8	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ ⁸	t u v T U V 8	8
9	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ ⁹	w x y z W X Y Z 9	9
0	わをんわー	ワラン ² ー0	0	0 [Press and hold] + ⁴
*	 ³ /Pictograph List ⁵		Pictograph List ⁵	*
	[Press and hold] Templates			
#	、 。 ? ! ・ (Single-byte Space)		, . ? ! ' - & () ¥ (Single-byte Space)	#
	[Press and hold] Symbol List ⁶			

¹ Appears when entering single-byte character.

² Appears when entering double-byte character.

³ Added to highlighted character.

⁴ Not Available in S! Mail text entry window

⁵ Press (*) to toggle symbol list/pictograph list while pictograph list is open.

⁶ In number mode, symbol list may not appear.

● In alphanumeric mode, last entered case appears first.

● To toggle input modes:  [Mode]

● To toggle double-byte/single-byte characters:  [Menu] → **2bytes character** or **1byte character**

● To toggle upper/lower case characters:  after entering hiragana, katakana or alphanumeric

● To insert line feeds:  [Line FD]

Key Assignments (2-touch Mode)

Kanji (Hiragana) Mode

<Upper Case Mode>

		Second digit									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			
	8	や	(ゆ)	よ	*	#			
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	わ	を	ん	ゝ	ゞ	6	7	8	9	0

<Lower Case Mode>

		Second digit									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit	1	あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			つ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										
	8	や		ゆ		よ					
	9										
	0	わ			ゝ	ゞ					

Katakana Mode

<Upper Case Mode>

		Second digit									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	¥	&			
	8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	*	#			
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	ゝ	ゞ	6	7	8	9	0

<Lower Case Mode>

		Second digit									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2						f	g	h	i	j
	3						k	l	m	n	o
	4			ツ			p	q	r	s	t
	5						u	v	w	x	y
	6						z				
	7										
	8	ヤ		ユ		ヨ					
	9										
	0	ワ ¹									

Alphanumerics Mode

		Second digit									
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
First digit	1	"	\$	%	'	+	a	b	c	d	e
	2	.	.	:	:	<	f	g	h	i	j
	3	=	>	@	[]	k	l	m	n	o
	4	^	_	' ¹ ' ²	{		p	q	r	s	t
	5	}	~ ¹ ~ ²				u	v	w	x	y
	6						z	?	!	-	/
	7						¥	&			
	8		()		*	#			
	9						1	2	3	4	5
	0						6	7	8	9	0

■ Toggle upper/lower case

¹ Appears when entering double-byte character.

² Appears when entering single-byte character.

Note

- A space is entered by pressing key corresponding to a blank where no character is assigned.
- In kanji (hiragana) or katakana mode, "" " or "" " is entered by pressing (✖) after entering characters. Press (✖) once for "" ", twice for "" ".
- In number mode, press and hold (0) to enter "+" (not available in S! Mail text field).

Key Assignments (NIKO-touch Mode)

Kanji (Hiragana) Mode

		Second digit									
First digit		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	あ	い	う	え	お	.	-	@	_	1
	2	か	き	く	け	こ		a	b	c	2
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ		d	e	f	3
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	っ	g	h	i	4
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の		j	k	l	5
	6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ		m	n	o	6
	7	ま	み	む	め	も		p	q	r	7
	8	や	ゆ	よ	ゃ	ゅ	ょ	t	u	v	8
	9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ		w	x	y	9
	0	わ	を	ん	.	。	-	.	!	?	0

Katakana Mode

		Second digit									
First digit		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	.	-	@	_	1
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ		a	b	c	2
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ		d	e	f	3
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	ッ	g	h	i	4
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ		j	k	l	5
	6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ		m	n	o	6
	7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ		p	q	r	7
	8	ヤ	ユ	ヨ	ャ	ュ	ョ	t	u	v	8
	9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ		w	x	y	9
	0	ワ	ヲ	ン	.	。	-	.	!	?	0

Note

- Press [Mode] to toggle kanji (hiragana) and single-byte number modes.
- To switch to katakana mode: In kanji (hiragana) mode, [Menu] → **1 byte character**
- To toggle lower/upper case: Enter a character →
- A space is entered by pressing key corresponding to a blank where no character is assigned.
- Press (*) once for "'", twice for "\". In kanji (hiragana) mode, enter characters before pressing (*).
- In number mode, press and hold (0) to enter "+" (not available in S! Mail text field).

Symbol List

Double-byte Symbol List

、	。	，	．	・	：	；	？	！	”
。	／	、	”	^	-	—	、	、	>
、	〃	全	々	メ	○	—	—	-	/
、	～	〃		…	…	’	’	”	”
()	[]	{	}	<	>		
《	》	「	」	『	』	【	】	+	-
±	×	÷	=	≠	<	>	≤	≥	∞
∴	♂	♀	°	’	”	℃	¥	\$	Φ
£	%	#	&	*	@	§	☆	★	○
●	◎	◇	◆	□	■	△	▲	▽	▼
※	〒	→	←	↑	↓	■	∈	∋	⊆
⊃	⊂	⊃	U	∩	∧	∨	→	⇒	⇔
∠	∠	∠	⊥	∩	∇	≡	≡	≡	≡
»	√	∞	∞	∴	∫	∫	Å	%	#
b	♪	†	‡	¶	○	ゐ	ゑ	ヰ	ヱ
ヴ	カ	ケ	A	B	Γ	Δ	E	Z	H
Θ	I	K	Λ	M	N	Ξ	O	Π	P
Σ	T	Υ	Φ	X	Ψ	Ω	α	β	γ

δ	ε	ζ	η	θ	ι	κ	λ	μ	ν
ξ	ο	π	ρ	σ	τ	υ	φ	χ	ψ
ω	A	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ё	Ж	З
И	Й	К	Л	М	Н	О	П	Р	С
Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ	Ъ	Ы
Ь	Э	Ю	Я	а	б	в	г	д	е
ё	ж	з	и	й	к	л	м	н	о
п	р	с	т	у	ф	х	ц	ч	ш
щ	ъ	ы	ь	э	ю	я	—		Г
Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г
Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г
Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г	Г
②	③	④	⑤	⑥	⑦	⑧	⑨	⑩	⑪
⑫	⑬	⑭	⑮	⑯	⑰	⑱	⑲	⑳	I
II	III	IV	V	VI	VII	VIII	IX	X	ミ
キ	ザ	ネ	グ	ト	ル	ス	リ	ツ	ロ
ドル	ドン	セ	ミ	ギ	mm	cm	km	mg	kg
cc	m	平成	、	、	No	KK	TEL	⊕	⊕

⊕	⊕	⊕	(株)	(有)	(代)	明治	大正	昭和	≡
≡	∫	∫	Σ	√	⊥	∠	∠	∠	∴
∩	U								

Single-byte Symbol List

!	"	#	\$	%	&	'	()	*
+	,	-	.	/	:	;	<	=	>
?	@	[¥]	^	_	'	{	
}	~	.	。	。	。	。	。	。	。

● To enter a space: ⌘P. 3-3

First Three Digits	Last Digit								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
010									
011	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
012	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
013	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
014	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
015	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
016	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
017	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
018	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
019	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
020	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
021	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
022	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
023	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
024	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
026	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
027	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
028	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
029	い	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ	ろ
031									
032	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2
033									
034	H	R	I	S	J	K	D	N	F
035									
036									
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x
039									
040									
041	あ	あ	あ	あ	い	う	え	え	え
042	が	が	が	が	き	く	け	け	け
043	さ	さ	さ	さ	じ	く	つ	つ	つ
044	だ	だ	だ	だ	ぢ	づ	の	の	の
045	な	な	な	な	ぢ	づ	の	の	の
046	び	び	び	び	ぢ	づ	の	の	の
047	ま	ま	ま	ま	ぢ	づ	の	の	の
048	よ	よ	よ	よ	ぢ	づ	の	の	の
049	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ゐ	ぢ	づ	の	の	の














First Three Digits										Last Digit										First Three Digits										Last Digit																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																							
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																														
050	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	161	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	207	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	207	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																																										
051	オ	ア	イ	エ	ウ	ク	ケ	コ	カ	キ	162	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	208	基	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀	鬼	機	紀





Appendix





19-21





Weather Indicator List




- Indicators and categories are subject to change without prior notice.




Weather	
	Clear (day)
	Clear (night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunderstorm
	Precipitation 0%-100%
	Later
	Occasionally
Pollen Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Very High

Cherry Blossom	
	Blossoms Opening
	Near Full Bloom
	Peak Bloom
	Past Peak

Fall Foliage	
	No Color
	Moderate Color
	Peak Color
	Past Peak

UV Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Very High

Typhoon	
	Formed
	Approaching
	Severe

Other Information	
	Heavy Rain
	Strong Winds
	Notifications

Memory List

Data Folder	Up to 3500 items/up to 300 MB (Including pre-installed data)
--------------------	---

- Shared with S! Appli List
(One S! Appli corresponds up to 6 MB.)

Calendar Events	Up to 1000 items
------------------------	------------------

Phone Book	Up to 1000 items
-------------------	------------------

Messaging (SMS and S! Mail combined)	Incoming Mail	Up to 3000 items
	Sent/Unsent	Up to 1000 items

Yahoo! Keitai	Saved Pages	[Yahoo! Keitai] Up to 20 items/750KB [PC Site Browser] Up to 20 items/1150KB
	Bookmarks	[Yahoo! Keitai] Up to 100 items [PC Site Browser] Up to 100 items
	URL History	[Yahoo! Keitai] URL Entry: Up to 20 items URL Access: Up to 100 items* [PC Site Browser] URL Entry: Up to 20 items URL Access: Up to 100 items*
	Cache	[Yahoo! Keitai] 750KB [PC Site Browser] 1150KB

* The number of savable items varies depending on URL length.

Specifications

940P

Weight (including battery)		149 g*
Dimensions (closed)		50 x 112 x 18.8 mm*
Standby Time (closed)	3G	640 hours*
	GSM	370 hours*
Talk Time	3G	220 minutes*
	Video Call	120 minutes*
	GSM	230 minutes*
TV Reception Time	Normal Mode	3.7 hours*
	ECO Mode	6.3 hours*
Charging Time	AC Charger	130 minutes*
	In-Car Charger	130 minutes*
Maximum Output	3G	0.25 W
	GSM	2.0 W

* Approximate value

- Values above were calculated with battery installed.
- Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with stable signals.
- Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery, with handset closed without calls or operations, in Standby with stable signals.
- TV-Reception Time is an average measured using earphone/microphone, with stable signals.
- Talk Time and Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, temperature, etc.).
- Talk Time and Standby Time may decrease when an S! Appli is active.

Battery

Voltage	3.7 V
Battery Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	800 mAh
Dimensions	45 x 4.5 x 37 mm*

* Approximate value

- Specifications subject to change without notice.

Index

Numerics

3G 2-11

A

AC Charger	1-14
Access History	
PC Site Browser	15-5
Yahoo! Keitai	15-4
Account Details	1-30, 4-12
Address (Adding/editing/deleting)	14-8
AF Tracking	6-11
After-Sales Service	19-33
Alarms	13-6
Album-Touch	6-15
All Reset	12-14
Alternative Image	2-6
Answer Phone	2-15
Answering Calls	
Video Calls	2-8
Voice Calls	2-5
Attachments	
Adding	14-8
Deleting	14-8
Opening/saving	14-13
Auto Answer	18-7
Auto Focus Lock	6-12
Auto Save (Camera)	18-16
Auto shutter	6-5, 6-7
Auto timer	6-7
Auto-sort	14-16
AV Output	11-13

B

Back Light	
Display	18-5
S! Appli	18-24
Video Calls	2-13
Background Music	9-7
Backup	
microSD Card	10-19
S! Address Back-up	4-10
Bar Code Reader	13-15
Basic Operations	
Handset	x
Internet	15-6
Battery	1-11
Battery Level	1-9, 1-12
Beauty plus	6-17
Blogging	8-7
Bluetooth®	11-6
Bluetooth® Passkey	11-8
Bookmarks	15-8
Books folder	10-3
BookSurfing®	8-6
Brightness	
Back Light	18-5
Camera	6-5
Video Calls	18-13
Browser (Initializing)	18-24

C	
Cache Memory.....	15-2
Calculator	13-8
Calendar	13-2
Calendar Events.....	13-2
Call Barring.....	2-21
Call Cost	18-9
Call Forwarding	2-18
Call Log.....	2-14
Show/Hide	12-10
Call Operations.....	2-12
Call Rejection	
Calls without Caller ID	12-13
Unknown Callers	12-13
Call Restrictions.....	12-12
Call Settings	18-9
Call Time	18-9
Call Waiting	2-20
Caller ID.....	2-3, 2-22
Camera [Section Contents].....	6-1
Camera-Touch.....	6-13
Center Access Code	1-28
Channel Setting.....	5-4
Character Code (Kuten Code)	
Character Code List	19-19
Input Options	3-6
Charge Limit	18-9
Charging Time	1-11
Clock Display.....	18-5
Color Scheme.....	18-4
Confirming Settings	18-27

Content Key	10-5
Continuous Shooting.....	6-6
Conversion Candidates.....	3-7
Conversion Methods.....	3-7
Cookies Setting/Deleting	
Internet	18-23
Mobile Widget.....	18-18
Copy Protected Files.....	10-5
Country/Region Code	2-10
Customer Service.....	19-34
Customized Screen	1-23

D	
Data Folder	10-2
Date & Time Settings.....	18-8
Deleting	
Calendar events	13-5
Messages.....	14-21
Phone Book	4-9
S! Appli.....	16-4
Delivery Report	14-10
Dictionary	13-13
Digital TV [Section Contents]	5-1
Digital TV Settings.....	18-14
Display.....	1-8
Display Indicators.....	1-8
Display Settings.....	18-3

Download	
Customized Screen	1-23
Fonts.....	1-24
From web pages.....	15-11
Lifestyle-Appli	13-10
Music	9-3
S! Appli.....	16-2
Templates	14-9
Widgets	7-4
Download Dictionary.....	3-11
Drafts.....	14-15
Driving Mode.....	1-17, 18-7

E	
e-Book Viewer	8-6
Earpiece Volume	
Video Calls	2-7
Voice Calls	2-5
Effect	6-18
Emergency Calls (110, 119, 118)	2-4
Emergency Positioning Request	2-4
Event Indicators.....	1-22

F	
Face Detection.....	6-11
Face Zoom	6-16
Flash setting	6-5, 6-9
Focus Setting.....	6-11
Folder/files.....	10-14
Font Settings	1-24

Font Size	
Call Logs.....	18-6
Collective Setting.....	18-6
Internet	18-6
Messaging	18-6
Phone Book	18-6
Text entry	18-6
Function List	19-2

G

Global Roaming Service	2-10
Graphic Mail	14-5
Group Settings (Phone Book)	4-6
GSM	2-11

H

Handset	
Menus.....	1-18
Parts & Functions	1-4
Power On/Off.....	1-15
Handset Security [Section Contents]	12-1
Help (Text Entry).....	3-2
Hide Call Logs/Address List	12-10
Hold	
Video Calls	2-12
Voice Calls	2-12
HTML messages	14-5

I

IC Card Lock.....	13-12
IC Transmission	11-4
IDD Prefix	2-9
Incoming Call Logs	2-13
Infrared.....	11-2
Inside Camera.....	6-3
Intelligent Auto	6-5, 6-9
Internal Display	1-8, 18-3
International Call	
From abroad.....	2-10
From Japan	2-9
International Setting.....	2-10
Internet [Section Contents]	15-1

K

Key Assignments	
Mode 1 (5-touch).....	19-15
Mode 2 (2-touch).....	19-16
Mode 3 (NIKO-touch).....	19-17
Key Pad Dial Lock	12-9
Key Tone	18-3
Keyguard	12-4
Kuten Code (Character Code)	19-19

L

Language	18-4
Lifestyle-Appli	13-10
Lock Message	12-8
Lock OFF at Open	12-7

M

Mail Group.....	14-18
Mail Security.....	12-12
Main Menu	1-18
Making Calls	
International Calls.....	2-9, 2-10
Video Calls	2-7
Voice Calls	2-2
Manner Mode	1-16, 2-12, 18-7
Manufacture Number	18-23
Memory List.....	19-25
Memory Manager (Internet).....	18-23
Menu Icons	18-4
Menu Numbers	1-19
Messaging [Section Contents]	14-1
microSD Card.....	10-16
Backup.....	10-19
Check.....	10-21
Formatting.....	10-18
Synchronizing	18-24
Missed Call Notification	2-20
Mobile Widget	7-2
Mobile W-Speed	5-2
Motion Control.....	1-10, 18-6
Music folder.....	10-2
Music Player [Section Contents]	9-1
My original set.....	6-5, 6-10
My Pictograms.....	3-4, 10-2

N	
Narrowing Down Predictive Candidates...	3-9
Network Information	1-15
New Messages	
Receiving	14-14
Viewing	14-10
Night mode	
Camera	6-5
Video Calls	18-13
Normal Mode (Simple Menu)	1-26
Notepad.....	13-8
Notification Light Settings	18-10
O	
Offline Mode	1-17
Open For New.....	18-4
Open-to-Ans. Call.....	18-7
Operator Names	2-11
Optional Services	2-17
Original Animation	10-13
Osaifu Keitai®	13-9
Other Documents folder.....	10-3
Outgoing Call Logs	2-13
Outside Camera.....	6-3

P	
Passwords.....	1-28
Passwords (Changing)	
Center Access Code	1-28
Phone Password	12-2
Security Code	2-21
PC Site Browser	15-2
Access.....	15-5
Display Settings	18-22
Memory Manager & Settings	18-23
Reset/Initialize.....	18-24
Security Settings	18-23
Pedometer	13-17
Personal Data Lock.....	12-5
Phone Book [Section Contents].....	4-1
Phone Password	1-28
Changing	12-2
Photo light setting	6-5, 6-9
Photo mode.....	6-5
Pictographs.....	3-4
Pictures (Still Images)	
Capturing	6-6
Editing	10-12
Pictures folder	10-2
PIN/PIN2	1-3
Changing	12-3
PIN Authentication	12-2
PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)	12-3
Play List	9-10
Play mode setting.....	9-6
Predictive Candidates.....	3-7

Privacy Key Lock	12-5
Private Menu	1-25
PUK/PUK2	1-3, 12-3

Q	
QR Code.....	13-15
Quick Open Menu	19-14

R	
Recipients (Adding/editing/deleting) ...	14-8
Referer Information.....	18-23
Remote Lock.....	13-12
Remote Monitoring	2-8
Reset	
All Reset	12-14
Browser Settings	18-24
Settings	12-14
Total Call Charge/Time	18-9
TV Settings	18-15
Ring Songs&Tones folder	10-2
Ring Time (Answer Phone).....	2-17
Ring Time Settings.....	12-13
Ringer Volume	18-2
Ringtone	10-8, 18-2
Ringtone Duration (Message).....	18-2
Roaming Dial Assistant.....	2-10
Root Certificates	18-23

S			
S! Addressbook Back-up.....	4-10	Security	
S! Appli [Section Contents]	16-1	Data Folder.....	10-14
S! GPS Navi [Section Contents]	17-1	Internet	18-23
S! Information Channel	8-2	S! Appli.....	16-4
S! Mail	14-2	Security Code	1-28
Creating/sending	14-4	Security Functions	12-2
Mail Notice.....	14-12	Server Mail	14-14
Settings	18-21	Setting When Closed	18-9
Universal Settings	18-20	Settings [Section Contents].....	18-1
S! Quick News	8-4	Shikkari Talk	2-5
Settings	18-18	Shortcuts	1-23
Save		Shutter sound.....	18-16
Alarms	13-7	Signal Strength.....	1-8
Calendar Events	13-2	Simple Menu.....	1-26
Camera	6-5	Slideshow	6-18
Notepad	13-8	Slideshow-Touch.....	6-18
Phone Book	4-3, 18-12	Smiley	3-5
S! Information Channel.....	8-2	SMS.....	14-2
S! Quick News	8-4	Creating/sending	14-7
Shortcut.....	1-23	Settings	18-22
Tasks.....	13-5	Universal Settings	18-20
User's Dictionary	3-11	Snooze	13-7
Saved Pages.....	15-8	SoftBank Utility Software	11-11
Script	18-23	Softkeys.....	ix
Scroll Unit.....	18-22	Software Update	19-12
SD Audio	9-2	Spam Filter	14-17
Secret Data Only.....	12-10	Speaker ON/OFF	2-12
Secret Mail Setting.....	12-11	Speed Selector	ix, 18-6
Secret Mode	12-10	SSL	15-3
Secure Remote Lock	12-8	Status Indicators	1-8
		Still Images (Picture)	
		Capturing	6-6
		Editing	10-12
		Streaming	15-12
		Symbols	3-4
		Symbol List.....	19-18
		T	
		Tasks	13-5
		Templates (Graphic Mail).....	14-5
		Text Entry [Section Contents].....	3-1
		Time Correction	18-8
		Timer Lock at Close	12-7
		TLS	15-3
		Touch AF/AE	6-14
		Touch Panel.....	1-21
		Touch Panel Operations	1-21
		Trimming (Editing Still Images)	10-13
		U	
		URL History	
		PC Site Browser.....	15-5
		Yahoo! Keitai.....	15-4
		USB	11-11
		User Mode (Manner Mode)	18-7
		User's Dictionary	3-11
		USIM Card.....	1-2
		USIM Card Phone Book	4-3
		USIM PINs.....	1-3

V

Vibrator	
Incoming alert	18-2
S! Appli	18-24
Videos (Recording)	6-7
Videos folder	10-3
View Blind	1-30
Viewfinder	
Camera	6-4
Video Camera	6-4
Voice Announce	13-14
Voice Dial	4-13
Voice Mail	2-19
Voice Recorder	13-14
Volume	
Ringtone	18-2
S! Appli	18-24
Video Calls	2-7
Voice Calls	2-5

W

Wallpaper	18-3
Warning Messages (PC Site Browser) ...	18-22
Warranty	19-33
Weather Indicator	8-3
White balance	
Still Images	18-16
Video Calls	18-13
Videos	18-17
Widgets	7-2
WMA Files	9-2
World Clock	18-8

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	15-2
Access	15-3
Display Settings	18-22
Memory Manager & Settings	18-23
Reset/Initialize	18-24
Security Settings	18-23

Z

Zoom	6-8
------------	-----

Warranty & Service

Warranty

Warranty is provided when you purchase a 940P.

- Check name of distributor and date of purchase.
- Read through contents and keep in a safe place.
- The warranty term is described in the warranty.

SoftBank is not liable for any damage resulting from use of this product.

After-Sales Service

See "Troubleshooting" (☞P.19-10) before contacting SoftBank for service or repairs. If you cannot find solutions or solve problems, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (☞P.19-34) in your subscription area and provide a detailed description of the problem.

- Repairs within warranty are performed under terms and conditions described.
- Out of warranty, any repairs are performed upon request at subscriber's expense.

Customer Service

If you have questions about SoftBank handsets or services, please call General Information.

For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

Check phone number before you dial.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at
157 for General Information or
113 for Customer Assistance

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491**
(Please take care to dial the correct number.
International charges will apply to this call.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Area	Service Center	Toll Free Number
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113

SoftBank 940P User Guide

March 2012, Second Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information, please visit a SoftBank shop.

Model: SoftBank 940P

Manufacturer: Panasonic Mobile Communications Co., Ltd.



モバイル・リサイクルネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands). Before you recycle, please remember these important points:

- Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
- Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.